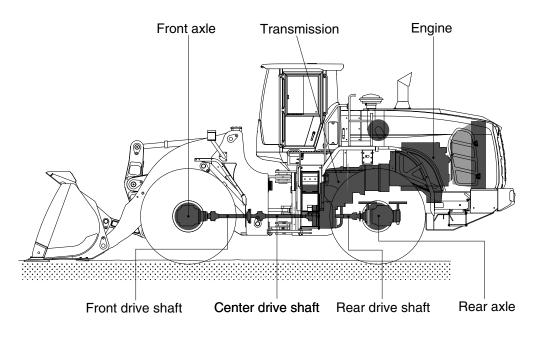
Group	1	Structure and Function	3-1
Group	2	Operational Checks and Troubleshooting	3-71
Group	3	Tests and Adjustments	3-83
Group	4	Disassembly and Assembly	3-84

## **GROUP 1 STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION**

## 1. POWER TRAIN COMPONENT OVERVIEW



985A3PT01

The power train consists of the following components:

- · Transmission
- · Front, center and rear drive shafts
- · Front and rear axles

Engine power is transmitted to the transmission through the torque converter.

The transmission is a hydraulically engaged five speed forward, three speed reverse countershaft type power shift transmission. A calliper-disc type parking brake is located on the transmission.

The transmission outputs through universal joints to three drive shaft assemblies. The front drive shaft is a telescoping shaft which drives the front axle. The front axle is mounted directly to the loader frame. The front axle is equipped with hydraulic lock differential as standard.

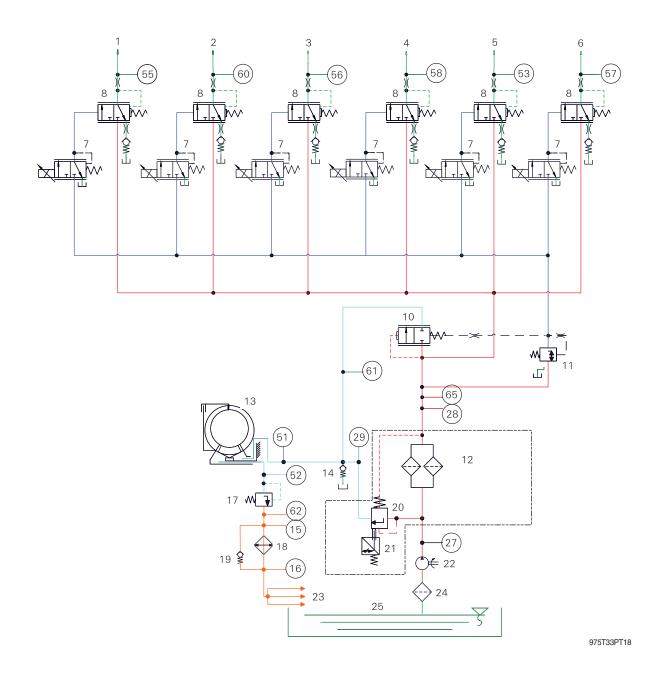
The rear axle is equipped with conventional differential as standard.

The rear axle is mounted on an oscillating pivot.

The power transmitted to front axle and rear axle is reduced by the pinion gear and ring gear of differential. It then passes from the differential to the sun gear shaft (axle shaft) of final drive.

The power of the sun gear is reduced by a planetary mechanism and is transmitted through the planetary hub to the wheel.

## HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT



- 1 Return flow to sump
- 2 Pilot pressure
- 3 Main pressure
- 4 Lubrication
- 5 Converter pressure

Positions 15, 16, 27, 28, 29, 51, 52, 53, 55, 56, 57, 58, 60, 61, 62, 65 correspond to the numbers on the installation drawing.

- 1 Clutch K1
- 3 Clutch K2
- 5 Clutch K4
- 7 Pilot valve
- 10 Main pressure valve
- 12 Transmission pressure filter
- 14 Converter safety valve
- 16 Connection of pressure oil from oil cooler
- 18 Oil cooler (heat exchanger)
- 20 Filter bypass valve
- 22 Transmission pump
- 24 Suction filter
- 27 Connection of pressure oil to filter
- 29 Filter bypass connection
- 52 Measuring point of oil pressure after converter
- 55 Measuring point of clutch pressure K1
- 57 Measuring point of clutch pressure KR
- 60 Measuring point of clutch pressure KV
- 62 Temperature sensor for oil temperature after the converter

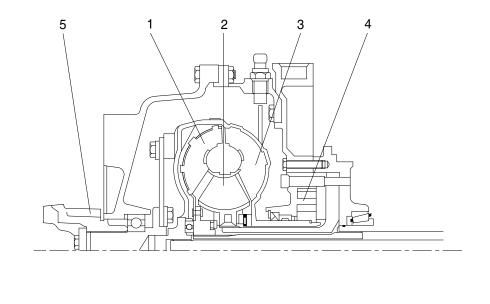
- 2 Clutch KV (clutch forward)
- 4 Clutch K3
- 6 Clutch KR (clutch reverse)
- 8 Downstream valve
- 11 Pressure reduction valve
- 13 Converter
- 15 Connection of pressure oil to oil cooler
- 17 Converter counter-pressure valve
- 19 Oil cooler bypass valve
- 21 Filter bypass switch
- 23 Lubrication
- 25 Tank
- 28 Connection of pressure oil from filter
- 51 Measuring point of oil pressure before converter
- 53 Measuring point of clutch pressure K4
- 56 Measuring point of clutch pressure K2
- 58 Measuring point of clutch pressure K3
- 61 Temperature sensor for sump temperature
- 65 Measuring point of system pressure

					Live sole	noid				
				Forward				Reverse		Neutral
Clutch	Solenoid valve	1	2	3	4	5	1	2	3	
KV	Y2	Х	Х		Х					
KR	Y6						Х	Х	Х	
K1	Y1	Х					Х			
K2	Y3		Х	Х				Х		
K3	Y4			Х	Х				Х	
K4	Y5		Х		Х					

#### Assignment of clutch and solenoid valve

### 2. TORQUE CONVERTER

## 1) FUNCTION



73033TM00

1Turbine3Pump5Input flange2Stator4Transmission pump

The converter is working according to the Trilok-system, i.e. it assumes at high turbine speed the characteristics, and with it the favorable efficiency of a fluid clutch.

The converter is designed according to the engine power so that the most favorable operating conditions are obtained for each installation case.

The Torque converter is composed of 3 main components : Pump wheel - turbine wheel - stator (reaction member)

These 3 impeller wheels are arranged in such a ring-shape system that the fluid is streaming through the circuit components in the indicated order.

Pressure oil from the transmission pump is constantly streaming through the converter. In this way, the converter can fulfill its task to multiply the torque of the engine and at the same time, the heat created in the converter is dissipated via the escaping oil.

The oil which is streaming out of the pump wheel, enters the turbine wheel and is there inversed in the direction of flow.

According to the rate of reversion, the turbine wheel and with it also the output shaft is receiving a more or less high reaction torque. The stator (reaction member), following the turbine, has the task to reverse the oil streaming out of the turbine once more and to deliver it under the suitable discharge direction to the pump wheel.

Due to the reversion, the stator receiving a reaction torque.

The relation turbine torque/pump torque is called torque multiplication.

This is the higher, the greater the speed difference of pump wheel and turbine wheel will be.

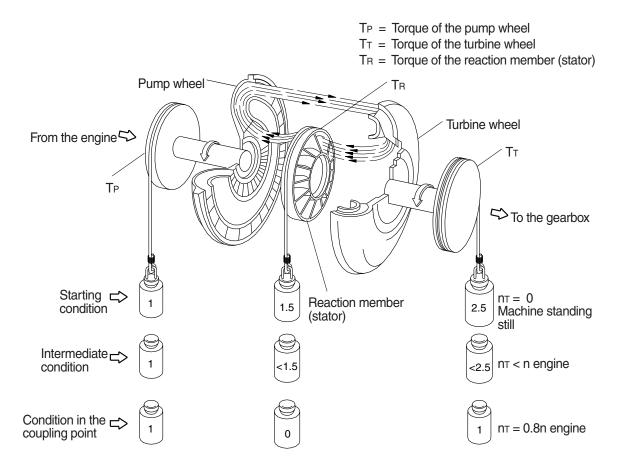
Therefore, the maximum torque multiplication is created at stationary turbine wheel.

With increasing output speed, the torque multiplication is decreasing. The adaption of the output speed to a certain required output torque will be infinitely variable and automatically achieved by the torque converter.

When the turbine speed is reaching about 80% of the pump speed, the torque multiplication becomes 1.0 i.e. the turbine torque becomes equal to that of the pump torque. From this point on, the converter is working similar to a fluid clutch.

A stator freewheel serves to improve the efficiency in the upper driving range, in the torque multiplication range it is backing-up the torque upon the housing, and is released in the clutch range. In this way, the stator can rotate freely.

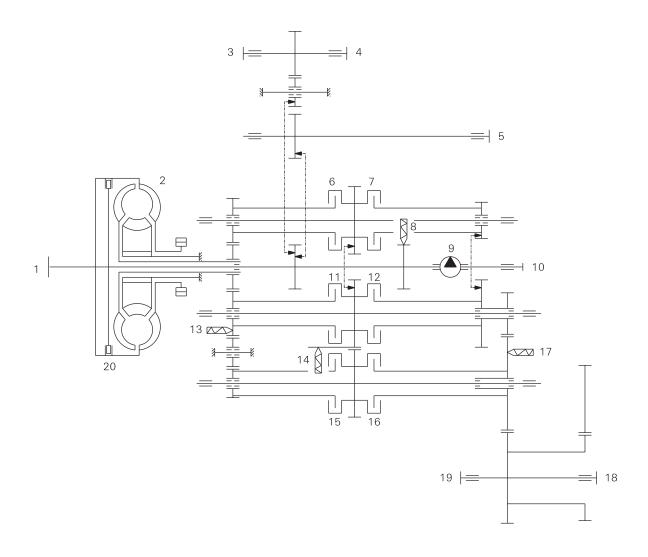
Function of a hydrodynamic torque converter (schematic view)



7577APT100

#### 3. TRANSMISSION

#### 1) DIAGRAM



1 Input

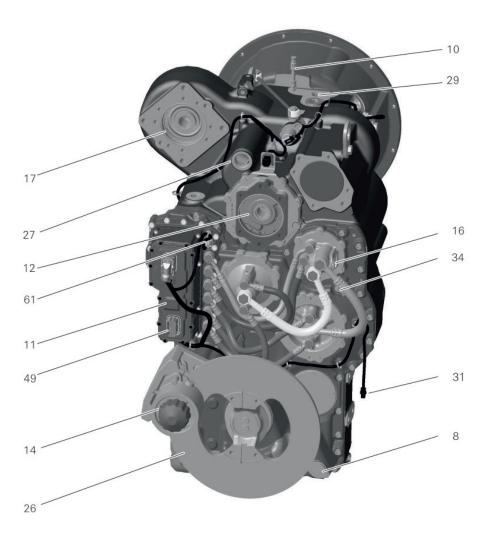
- 3 PTO (if equipped)
- 5 PTO (if equipped)
- 7 Clutch K1
- 9 Pump
- 11 Clutch KR (clutch reverse)
- 13 Inductive sensor for turbine speed
- 14 Emergency steering pump (optional)
- 15 Clutch K4
- 17 Inductive sensor for the output speed
- 19 Output

- 2 Converter
- 4 PTO (if equipped)
- 6 Clutch KV (clutch forward)
- 8 Inductive sensor for engine speed
- 10 Engine-dependent PTO
- 12 Clutch K2
- 14 Inductive sensor for speed of central gear chain

975T33PT10

- 16 Clutch K3
- 18 Output
- 20 Lock-up clutch (not used)

#### 2) INSTALLATION VIEW

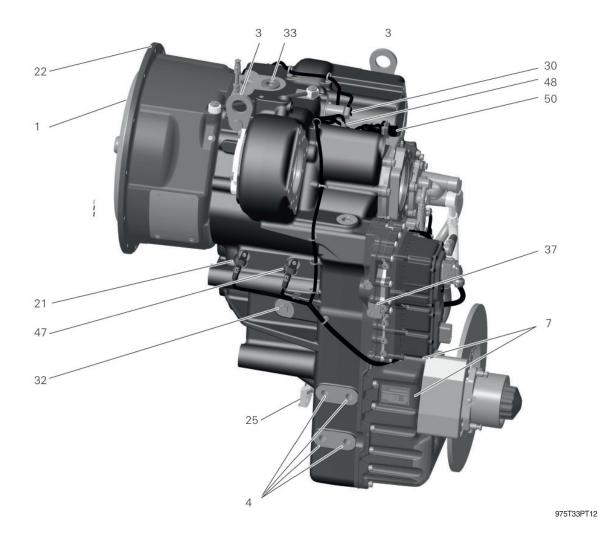


975T33PT11

- 8 Connection for oil level gauge
- 10 Breather
- 11 Electro hydraulic transmission control unit
- 12 Engine-dependent PTO
- 14 Parking brake disc brake
- 16 Connection from oil cooler
- 17 PTO (if equipped)
- 26 Output flange
- 27 Connection to filter
- 29 Connection from filter bypass

- 31 Connector for filter bypass valve
- 34 Inductive sensor for output speed
- 39 Connection of return flow to sump
- 49 Machine connector
- 61 Temperature sensor for oil temperature in sump

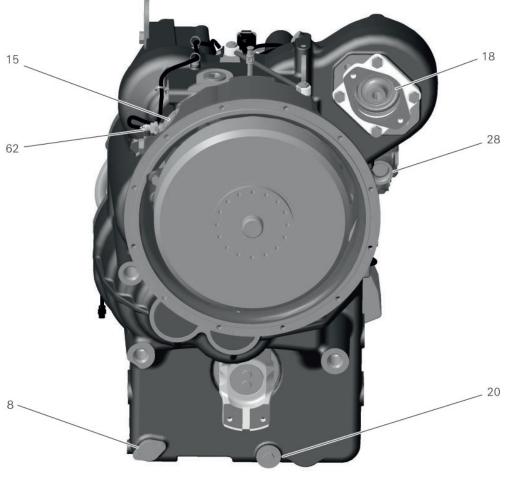
#### INSTALLATION VIEW



- 1 Converter
- 3 Lifting eye
- 4 Transmission suspension holes
- 7 Name plate
- 15 Connection to heat exchanger
- 21 Inductive sensor for turbine speed
- 22 Connection to engine
- 25 Output flange

- 30 Solenoid valve for converter clutch (not used)
- 32 Connection of return flow to sump M26X1.5
- 33 Oil filler plug M42X2 (Tightening torque 145 Nm)
- 37 Connection for system pressure M16X1.5
- 47 Inductive sensor for speed of central gear chain
- 48 Inductive sensor for engine speed
- 50 Plug

#### INSTALLATION VIEW

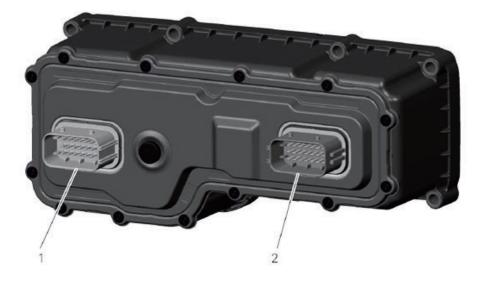


975T33PT13

- 8 Connection for oil level gauge
- 15 Connection to oil cooler
- 18 PTO (if equipped)
- 20 Oil drain plug M38X1.5 (Tightening torque 80 Nm)

- 28 Connection from filter
- 62 Temperature sensor for oil temperature after converter

#### 3) ELECTRONIC TRANSMISSION CONTROL UNIT



960T33PT13

- 1 Transmission connector
- 2 Machine connector

The electronic transmission control unit controls the electro-hydraulic transmission control unit.

The electronic control unit (EC4A) is designed as on-site electronics. An internal plug connection and awiring harness (plug-in connector 1) connect the electronic transmission control unit and the internal elements of the transmission. A second slot is provided for the connection of the transmission to the machine (plug-in connector 2). This plug connection is responsible for the power supply via on-board supply system and the connection to the CAN communication network. At delivery the second plug connection is closed with a cap for protection against outside influences. Carefully remove the cap with as crewdriver or similar tool. Do not damage the detents on the plug.

## 4. FAULT CODE

## 1-1) MACHINE FAULT CODE

DTC		Diagnastic Criteria	Application						
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	G	С	S				
	3	10 seconds continuous, Hydraulic Oil Temp. Measurement Voltage > 3.95 V							
	4	10 seconds continuous, Hydraulic Oil Temp. Measurement Voltage < 0.3 V							
	(Resu	Its / Symptoms)							
		nitor – Hydraulic Oil temperature display failure							
101	2. Cor	trol Function – No warming up operation, No fuel warmer function operation,							
		High hydraulic oil temperature warning failure							
	(Chec	king list)							
	1. CN	-58B (#23) – CD-01 (#2) Checking Open/Short							
	2. CN	-58B (#25) – CD-01 (#1) Checking Open/Short							
	0	10 seconds continuous, Steering main pump pressure Measurement Voltage > 5.3 V							
	4	10 seconds continuous, Steering main pump pressure Measurement							
	4	Voltage < 0.3 V							
	(Results / Symptoms)								
000	1. Moi	nitor – Steering main pump press. Display failure							
202	2. Control Function – No automatic Emergency steering operation, ECO gauge display failure								
	3. RM	S – Working hours accumulation failure							
	(Checking list)								
	1. CN-58B (#35) – CD-39 (B) Checking Open/Short								
	2. CN-58A (#11) – CD-39 (A) Checking Open/Short								
	3. CN-58B (#25) – CD-39 (C) Checking Open/Short								
	0	10 seconds continuous,							
	•	Boom cylinder 'head' pressure Measurement Voltage > 5.3 V							
	4	10 seconds continuous,							
		Boom cylinder 'head' pressure Measurement Voltage < 0.3 V							
	(Results / Symptoms)								
204	1. Monitor – Boom cylinder 'head' press. display failure								
-	2. Control Function – No Boom pressure calibration function operation, workload measurement sys.								
	operation failure								
		king list)							
		-58B (#29) – CD-80 (B) Checking Open/Short							
		-58A (#11) – CD-80 (A) Checking Open/Short -58B (#25) – CD-80 (C) Checking Open/Short							

DTC		Diagnostia Criteria	Application						
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	G	С	S				
-	0	10 seconds continuous,							
	0	Boom cylinder 'rod' pressure Measurement Voltage > 5.3V							
	4	10 seconds continuous,							
		Boom cylinder 'rod' pressure Measurement Voltage < 0.3V							
	(Resu	lts / Symptoms)							
205		nitor – Boom cylinder 'rod' press. display failure							
200	2. Cor	ntrol Function – No Boom pressure calibration function operation, workload mea	asurer	nent s	sys.				
		operation failure							
	•	king list)							
		-58B(#36) – CD-81(B) Checking Open/Short							
		-58A(#11) – CD-81(A) Checking Open/Short							
		-58B(#25) – CD-81(C) Checking Open/Short							
	3	10 seconds continuous, Fuel level Measurement Voltage > 3.8V							
	4	10 seconds continuous, Fuel level Measurement Voltage < 0.3V							
	(Resu	Its / Symptoms)							
301	1. Mor	nitor – Fuel level display failure							
501	2. Control Function – Fuel level low warning operation failure								
	(Chec	king list)							
	1. CN·	-58B (#22) – CD-02 (#2) Checking Open/Short							
	2. CN·	-58B (#25) – CD-02 (#1) Checking Open/Short							
		(In the startup conditions) 30 seconds continuous, Fan speed < 10 rpm in							
	8	the Remote cooling fan EPPR current reference value is in X Ma(differ by							
		model)							
318	(Resu	Its / Symptoms)							
310	1. Mor	nitor – Cooling Fan revolutions display failure							
	(Chec	king list)							
	1. CN·	-58A (#15) – CD-73 (#1) Checking Open/Short							
	2. CN-	-58A (#18) – CD-73 (#2) Checking Open/Short							
	3	10 seconds continuous,							
		Accel pedal position 1 voltage Measurement Voltage > 5.0 V							
	4	10 seconds continuous,							
,		Accel pedal position 1 voltage Measurement Voltage < 0.2 V							
	`	Its / Symptoms)							
339		hitor – Accel pedal position 1 voltage display failure							
		ntrol Function – Engine rpm control failure							
	•	king list)							
		-58B(#39) – CN-162(#2) Checking Open/Short							
		-58A(#6) – CN-162(#3) Checking Open/Short							
	3. CIN	-58A(#8) – CN-162(#1) Checking Open/Short							

DTC	;	Diagnostia Critoria	Application						
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	G	С	S				
	3	10 seconds continuous,							
	3	Accel pedal position 2 voltage Measurement Voltage > 5.0 V							
	4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4								
		Accel pedal position 2 voltage Measurement Voltage < 0.2 V							
		Its / Symptoms)							
343		nitor – Accel pedal position 2 voltage display failure							
		ntrol Function – Engine rpm control failure							
		king list)							
		-58B (#40) – CN-162 (#5) Checking Open/Short -58A (#7) – CN-162 (#6) Checking Open/Short							
		-58A (#7) – CN-162 (#4) Checking Open/Short							
	0.011	10 seconds continuous, Brake oil pressure Measurement Voltage > 5.3V							
	4	10 seconds continuous, Brake oil pressure Measurement Voltage < 0.3V							
		Its / Symptoms)	-						
	· ·	nitor – Brake oil press. display failure							
503		ntrol Function – Brake oil pressure low warning display failure							
		king list)							
	1. CN-	-58B (#27) – CD-03 (B) Checking Open/Short							
	2. CN-	-58A (#11) – CD-03 (A) Checking Open/Short							
	3. CN-	-58B (#25) – CD-03 (C) Checking Open/Short							
	0	10 seconds continuous, Parking oil pressure Measurement Voltage > 5.3V							
	4	10 seconds continuous, Parking oil pressure Measurement Voltage < 0.3V							
	(Resu	Its / Symptoms)							
	1. Mor	nitor – Parking oil Press. display failure							
507		ntrol Function – No judgment Parking status							
		king list)							
		-58B (#34) – CD-26 (B) Checking Open/Short							
	2. CN-58A (#11) – CD-26 (A) Checking Open/Short								
	3. CN-	-58B (#25) – CD-26 (C) Checking Open/Short			<u> </u>				
	0	10 seconds continuous, Brake oil charging priority pressure Measurement Voltage > 5.3V							
		10 seconds continuous,							
	4	Brake oil charging priority pressure Measurement Voltage < 0.3V							
	(Results / Symptoms)								
557									
		nitor – Brake oil charging priority press. display failure ntrol Function – Cooling fan revolutions control failure, Brake oil(Accumulator) c	hargin	g failu	re				
		king list)	÷	-					
	1. CN-	-58B (#38) – CD-31 (B) Checking Open/Short							
	2. CN-	-58A (#11) – CD-31 (A) Checking Open/Short							
	3. CN-	-58B (#25) – CD-31 (C) Checking Open/Short							

DTC	;	Diagnostia Critaria	Ар	Application						
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	G	С	S					
	0	10 seconds continuous, Battery input Voltage > 35V								
	1	10 seconds continuous, Battery input Voltage < 18V								
	(Resu	Its / Symptoms)		1	1					
705		itrol Function – Disabled startup								
700	(Chec	king list)								
	1. Che	ecking battery voltage								
	2. CN·	-58A (#1) – CN-36 (07 fuse) Checking Open/Short								
	3. CN·	-58A (#2) – CN-36 (07 fuse) Checking Open/Short		-						
	1	(In the 500rpm or more) 10 seconds continuous,								
		Alternator Node I Measurement Voltage < 18V								
	(Resu	lts / Symptoms)								
707		trol Function – Battery charging circuit failure								
		king list)								
		58B (#33) – CN-04 (#18) Checking Open/Short								
	2. CN·	04 (#18) – CN-74 (#2) Checking Open/Short		1	1					
	3	10 seconds continuous,								
		Boom position sensor signal voltage Measurement Voltage > 5.0V								
	4	10 seconds continuous,								
	(D	Boom position sensor signal voltage Measurement Voltage < 0.3V								
		lts / Symptoms)								
700		nitor – Boom position sensor signal voltage display failure	Do		0+0.0+					
728		ntrol Function – No calibration angle sensor, No calibration boom pressure tion failure,	, во	ים חוכ	eleni					
	Soft end stop(Boom) operation failure, Lock-up clutch operation failure (Checking list)									
	1. CN-58B (#37) – CN-100 (B) Checking Open/Short									
		-58A (#5) – CN-100 (C) Checking Open/Short								
		-58B (#25) – CN-100 (A) Checking Open/Short								
		10 seconds continuous,	_							
	3	Bucket position sensor signal voltage Measurement Voltage > 5.0V								
	4	10 seconds continuous,								
	4	Bucket position sensor signal voltage Measurement Voltage < 0.3V								
	(Results /Symptoms)									
700	1. Monitor – Bucket position sensor signal voltage display failure									
729	2. Co	ntrol Function – No calibration angle sensor, Bucket Detent operation f	ailure	, Soft	end					
	stop(E	Bucket) operation failure								
		king list)								
		58B(#30) – CN-101(B) Checking Open/Short								
		-58A(#5) – CN-101(C) Checking Open/Short								
	3. CN·	58B(#25) – CN-101(A) Checking Open/Short								

DTC			Applicatio							
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	G	С	S					
	2	(When mounting the A/C Controller) 10 seconds continuous, A/C controller Communication Data Error								
831	(Resu	Its / Symptoms)								
	1. Cor	trol Function – A/C Controller malfunction								
	2	10 seconds continuous, ECM Communication Data Error								
841		Its /Symptoms) htrol Function – ECM operation failure								
	2	10 seconds continuous, TCU Communication Data Error								
842	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – TCU operation failure									
	2	10 seconds continuous, Monitor Communication Data Error								
844	(Results / Symptoms)									
	1. Control Function – Monitor operation failure									
	2	(When mounting the RMCU) 90 seconds continuous, RMCU Communication Data Error								
850	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – RMCU operation failure									
	2	(When mounting the EHCU) 10 seconds continuous, EHCU Communication Data Error								
861	(Resu	(Results / Symptoms)								
	1. Cor	trol Function – EHCU operation failure								
	2	(When mounting the BKCU)								
869	-	10 seconds continuous, BKCU Communication Data Error								
000		Its / Symptoms)								
	1. Cor	ntrol Function – BKCU operation failure								

## 1-2) EHCU FAULT CODE

HCESPN	FMI	Description			
2333	9	Communication timeout between EHCU and TCU			
2331	9	Communication timeout between EHCU and MCU			
2332	9	mmunication timeout between EHCU and working joystick			
2317	9	Communication timeout between EHCU and steering joystick			
2319	2	Steering joystick position signal error			
2320	2	Steering joystick - FNR enable switch error			
2321	2	Steering joystick - foward switch error			
2322	2	Steering joystick - neutral switch error			
2323	2	Steering joystick - reverse switch error			
2324	2	Steering joystick - kick down switch error			
2325	2	Steering joystick - steering on switch error			
2326	5	PVE coil power current below normal or open circuit			
2326	6	PVE coil power current above normal or grounded circuit			
2327	0	PVE coil PWM duty cycle input value above normal operation range			
2327	1	PVE coil PWM duty cycle input value below normal operation range			
2327	5	PVE coil PWM duty cycle current below normal or open circuit			
2327	6	PVE coil PWM duty cycle current above normal or grounded circuit			
2327	14	PVE coil PWM duty cycle control block parameter invalid			
2311	2	Boom joystick position signal error			
2311	0	Boom joystick position input value above normal operation range			
2311	1	Boom joystick position input value below normal operation range			
2311	3	Boom joystick position input voltage above normal or shorted to high source			
2311	4	Boom joystick position input voltage below normal or shorted to low source			
2311	13	Boom joystick position control block out of calibration			
2311	14	Boom joystick position control block parameter invalid			
2311	31	Boom joysitck position signal redundancy lost			
2313	2	Bucket joystick position signal error			
2313	0	Bucket joystick position input value above normal operation range			
2313	1	Bucket joystick position input value below normal operation range			
2313	3	Bucket joystick position input voltage above normal or shorted to high source			
2313	4	Bucket joystick position input voltage below normal or shorted to low source			
2313	13	Bucket joystick position control block out of calibration			
2313	14	Bucket joystick position control block parameter invalid			
2313	31	Bucket joysitck position signal redundancy lost			
2315	2	Aux joystick position signal error			
2315	0	Aux joystick position input value above normal operation range			
2315	1	Aux joystick position input value below normal operation range			

HCESPN	FMI	Description			
2315	3	Aux joystick position input voltage above normal or shorted to high source			
2315	4	Aux joystick position input voltage below normal or shorted to low source			
2315	13	joystick position control block out of calibration			
2315	14	Aux joystick position control block parameter invalid			
2315	31	Aux joysitck position signal redundancy lost			
2304	0	Boom up EPPR valve input value above normal operation range			
2304	1	Boom up EPPR valve input value below normal operation range			
2304	5	Boom up EPPR valve input current below normal or open circuit			
2304	6	Boom up EPPR valve input current above normal or grounded circuit			
2304	14	Boom up EPPR valve block parameter invalid			
2305	0	Boom down EPPR valve input value above normal operation range			
2305	1	Boom down EPPR valve input value below normal operation range			
2305	5	Boom down EPPR valve input current below normal or open circuit			
2305	6	Boom down EPPR valve input current above normal or grounded circuit			
2305	14	Boom down EPPR valve block parameter invalid			
2306	0	Bucket in EPPR valve input value above normal operation range			
2306	1	Bucket in EPPR valve input value below normal operation range			
2306	5	Bucket in EPPR valve input current below normal or open circuit			
2306	6	Bucket in EPPR valve input current above normal or grounded circuit			
2306	14	Bucket in EPPR valve block parameter invalid			
2307	0	Bucket dump EPPR valve input value above normal operation range			
2307	1	Bucket dump EPPR valve input value below normal operation range			
2307	5	Bucket dump EPPR valve input current below normal or open circuit			
2307	6	Bucket dump EPPR valve input current above normal or grounded circuit			
2307	14	Bucket dump EPPR valve block parameter invalid			
2308	0	Aux. Up EPPR valve input value above normal operation range			
2308	1	Aux. Up EPPR valve input value below normal operation range			
2308	5	Aux. Up EPPR valve input current below normal or open circuit			
2308	6	Aux. Up EPPR valve input current above normal or grounded circuit			
2308	14	Aux. Up EPPR valve block parameter invalid			
2309	0	Aux. Down EPPR valve input data above normal operation range			
2309	1	Aux. Down EPPR valve input data below normal operation range			
2309	5	Aux. Down EPPR valve input current below normal or open circuit			
2309	6	Aux. Down EPPR valve input current above normal or grounded circuit			
2309	14	Aux. Down EPPR valve block parameter invalid			
2328	0	EHCU sensor power voltage high			
2328	1	EHCU sensor power voltage low			
2328	3	EHCU sensor power voltage above normal or shorted to high source			

HCESPN	FMI	Description			
2328	4	U sensor power voltage below normal or shorted to low source			
2329	0	U power voltage high			
2329	1	CU power voltage low			
2329	11	EHCU safety cpu error			
739	2	mrest switch signal error			
2334	0	Steering pilot pressure sensor data above normal range			
2334	1	Steering pilot pressure sensor data below normal range			
2335	2	eering proportional valve moving position error			
2335	14	Steering proportional valve start position error			

## 1-3) AAVM FAULT CODE

Fault Code	Description
A01	AAVM Communication Error - AAVM
A02	AAVM Communication Error -Front Camera
A03	AAVM Communication Error -Rear Camera
A04	AAVM Communication Error -Left Camera
A05	AAVM Communication Error -Right Camera
A06	Manual Setting Fail
A07	No MCU CID
A08	MCU CID Format Error
A09	AAVM Hardware Error -AAVM
A10	AAVM Hardware Error -Front Camera
A11	AAVM Hardware Error -Rear Camera
A12	AAVM Hardware Error -Left Camera
A13	AAVM Hardware Error -Right Camera
A14	MCU CID Model is not registered
A15	MCU CID Model can't be applied

# 2) ENGINE FAULT CODE

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
111 629 12	Engine control module critical internal failure - Bad intelligent device or component. Error internal to the ECM related to memory hardware failures or internal ECM voltage supply circuits.	Possible no noticeable performance effects, engine dying, or hard starting.
115 612 2	Engine magnetic crankshaft speed/position lost both of two signals - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected the primary and backup speed sensor signals are connected backwards.	The engine will shut down or will not start.
122 102 3	Intake manifold 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the intake manifold pressure circuit.	Engine power derate.
123 102 4	Intake manifold 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low Source. Low signal voltage or open circuit detected at the intake manifold pressure circuit.	Engine power derate.
124 102 16	Intake manifold 1 pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Intake manifold pressure is above the maximum operating limit.	Engine power derate.
125 102 18	Intake Manifold 1 Pressure - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Intake manifold pressure is below the minimum operating limit.	Engine power derate.
131 91 3	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at accelerator pedal position number 1 circuit.	The engine will operate in limp home mode.
132 91 4	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at accelerator pedal position number 1 signal circuit.	The engine will operate in limp home mode.
133 974 3	Remote accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at remote accelerator pedal position signal circuit.	Remote accelerator will not operate.
134 974 4	Remote accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at remote accelerator pedal position signal circuit.	Remote accelerator will not operate.
143 100 18	Engine oil rifle pressure - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Engine oil pressure signal indicates engine oil pressure is below the engine protection warning limit.	Engine power derate.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
144 110 3	Engine coolant temperature 1 sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at engine coolant temperature circuit.	Fan will stay ON if controlled by ECM.
145 110 4	Engine coolant temperature 1 sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at engine coolant temperature circuit.	Fan will stay ON if controlled by ECM.
146 110 16	Engine coolant temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Engine coolant temperature is above engine protection warning limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red stop lamp starts flashing.
151 110 0	Engine coolant temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. Engine coolant temperature signal indicates engine coolant temperature above engine protection critical limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red stop lamp starts flashing.
153 105 3	Intake manifold 1 temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at intake manifold air temperature circuit.	Fan will stay ON if controlled by ECM.
154 105 4	Intake manifold 1 temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at intake manifold air temperature circuit.	Fan will stay ON if controlled by ECM.
155 105 0	Intake manifold 1 temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. Intake manifold air temperature signal indicates intake manifold air temperature above engine protection critical limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red stop lamp starts flashing.
175 3464 3	Electronic throttle control actuator driver circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. A short circuit to battery or open circuit has been detected in the engine intake air throttle actuator signal circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
176 3464 4	Electronic throttle control actuator driver circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. A short circuit to ground has been detected in the engine intake air throttle actuator signal circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
177 3464 7	Electronic throttle control actuator - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The engine intake air throttle actuator has failed the auto zero span check.	Possible reduced engine performance.
187 3510 4	Sensor supply 2 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at the sensor supply number 2 circuit.	Engine power derate.
195 111 3	Coolant level sensor 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at engine coolant level circuit.	None on performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
196 111 4	Coolant level sensor 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at engine coolant level circuit.	None on performance.
197 111 18	Coolant level - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Low coolant level has been detected.	Engine power derate.
221 108 3	Barometric pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at barometric pressure circuit.	Engine power derate.
222 108 4	Barometric pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at barometric pressure circuit.	Engine power derate.
227 3510 3	Sensor supply 2 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at sensor supply number 2 circuit.	Engine power derate.
234 190 0	Engine crankshaft speed/position - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. Engine speed signal indicates engine speed above engine protection limit.	Engine power derate.
238 3511 4	Sensor supply 3 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected on the +5 volt sensor supply circuit to the engine speed sensor.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
239 3511 3	Sensor supply 3 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High voltage detected on the 5 volt sensor supply circuit to the engine speed sensor.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
241 84 2	Wheel-based vehicle speed - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM lost the vehicle speed signal or is reading an erratic value.	Engine speed limited to ,maximum engine speed without VSS parameter value. Cruise control, gear-down protection, and road speed governor will not work.
245 647 4	Fan control circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the fan control circuit when commanded on.	The fan may stay on continuously or not run at all.
249 171 3	Ambient air temperature sensor 1 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at ambient air temperature circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
256 171 4	Ambient air temperature sensor 1 circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at ambient air temperature circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
271 1347 4	Fuel pump pressurizing assembly 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the fuel pump actuator circuit.	Engine power derate.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
272 1347 3	Fuel pump pressurizing assembly 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at the fuel pump actuator circuit.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
285 639 9	SAE J1939 multiplexing PGN timeout error - Abnormal update rate. The ECM expected information from a multiplexed device but did not receive it soon enough or did not receive it at all.	At least one multiplexed device will not operate properly.
286 639 13	SAE J1939 multiplexing configuration error - Out of calibration. The ECM expected information from a multiplexed device but only received a portion of the necessary information.	At least one multiplexed device will not operate properly.
288 974 19	Sae J1939 multiplexing remote accelerator pedal or lever position sensor circuit - Received network data in error. The oem vehicle electronic control unit (VECM) detected a fault with the remote accelerator.	Remote accelerator will not operate.
295 108 2	Barometric pressure - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. An error in the barometric pressure sensor signal was detected by the ECM.	Engine power derate.
322 651 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 1 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. Current detected at injector 1 when voltage is turned OFF.	Engine power derate.
323 655 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 5 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. Current detected at injector 5 when voltage is turned OFF.	The current to the injector is shut OFF. Engine power derate.
324 653 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 3 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. Current detected at injector 3 when voltage is turned OFF.	The current to the injector is shut OFF. Engine power derate.
325 656 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 6 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. Current detected at injector 6 when voltage is turned OFF.	The current to the injector is shut OFF. Engine power derate.
331 652 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 2 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. Current detected at injector 2 when voltage is turned OFF.	The current to the injector is shut OFF. Engine power derate.
332 654 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 4 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. Current detected at injector 4 when voltage is turned OFF.	The current to the injector is shut OFF. Engine power derate.
334 110 2	Engine coolant temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The engine coolant temperature sensor is reading an erratic value at initial key ON.	None on performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
338 1267 3	Idle shutdown vehicle accessories relay driver circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. Open circuit or short to voltage source detected at the idle shutdown vehicle accessory/ignition bus relay circuit.	Vehicle accessories or ignition bus loads controlled by the idle shutdown relay will not power up.
339 1267 4	Idle shutdown vehicle accessories relay driver circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at the idle shutdown vehicle accessory or ignition bus relay circuit when commanded ON.	Vehicle accessories or ignition bus loads controlled by the idle shutdown relay will not power up.
343 629 12	Engine control module warning internal hardware failure - Bad intelligent device or component. ECM power supply errors have been detected.	Engine power derate.
346 630 12	Engine control module calibration memory software - Bad intelligent device or component. Invalid switch configuration adjustable parameter setting have been detected by the engine control module (ECM).	Various optional switch inputs to the ECM may not operate correctly.
351 627 12	Injector power supply - Bad intelligent device or component. The ECM measured injector boost voltage is low.	Engine power derate.
352 3509 4	Sensor supply 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at sensor supply number 1 circuit.	Engine power derate.
383 729 5	Engine intake air heater 1 circuit - Current below normal or open circuit. A malfunctioning engine intake air heater circuit has been detected.	Engine may not start or may be difficult to start.
386 3509 3	Sensor supply 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at sensor supply number 1 circuit.	Engine power derate.
415 100 1	Engine oil rifle pressure - Data valid but below normal operational range - Most severe level. Oil pressure signal indicates oil pressure below the engine protection critical limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, engine will shut down 30 seconds after red stop lamp starts flashing.
418 97 15	Water in fuel indicator - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level. water has been detected in the fuel filter.	None on performance.
427 639 9	J1939 data link - Abnormal update rate. Communication between the engine control module (ECM) and another device on the SAE J1939 data link has been lost.	Engine will only idle.
428 97 3	Water in fuel indicator sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at the water in fuel circuit.	None on performance. No water in fuel warning available.
435 100 2	Engine oil rifle pressure - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The engine oil pressure sensor is reading an erratic value.	None on performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
436 105 2	Intake manifold 1 temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The intake manifold temperature sensor is reading an erratic value at initial key on or while the engine is running.	Possible reduced engine performance.
441 168 18	Battery 1 voltage - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. ECM supply voltage is below the minimum system voltage level.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
442 168 16	Battery 1 Voltage - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. ECM supply voltage is above the maximum system voltage level.	None on performance.
451 157 3	Injector metering rail 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the rail fuel pressure sensor circuit.	Power and/or speed derate.
452 157 4	Injector metering rail 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the rail fuel pressure sensor circuit.	Power and/or speed derate.
483 1349 3	Injector metering rail 2 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the fuel rail 2 pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
484 1349 4	Injector metering rail 2 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the fuel rail 2 pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
515 3514 3	Sensor supply 6 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High voltage detected on the +5 volt sensor supply circuit to the fuel rail pressure sensor.	Engine power derate.
516 3514 4	Sensor supply 6 circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected on the +5 volt sensor supply circuit to the fuel rail pressure sensor.	Engine power derate.
553 157 16	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. The ECM has detected that fuel pressure is higher than commanded pressure.	Possible reduced engine performance.
555 101 16	Crankcase pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. The crankcase breather filter requires maintenance.	None on performance.
556 101 0	Crankcase pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. The crankcase breather filter requires maintenance.	None on performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
559 157 18	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. The ecm has detected that fuel pressure is lower than commanded pressure.	Possibly hard to start or low power. Engine could possibly <b>not</b> start.
584 677 3	Starter relay driver circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. Open circuit or high voltage detected at starter lockout circuit.	Either the engine will not start or the engine will not have starter lockout protection.
585 677 4	Starter relay driver circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at starter lockout circuit.	Either the engine will not start or the engine will not have starter lockout protection.
595 103 16	Turbocharger 1 speed - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. High turbocharger speed has been detected by the ecm.	Engine power derate.
596 167 16	Electrical charging system voltage - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. High battery voltage detected by the battery voltage monitor feature.	None on performance.
597 167 18	Electrical charging system voltage - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Low battery voltage detected by the battery voltage monitor feature.	None on performance.
649 1378 31	Engine oil change interval - Condition exists. Change engine oil and filter.	None on performance.
687 103 18	Turbocharger 1 speed - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Low turbocharger speed detected by the ECM.	Engine power derate. The ECM uses an estimated turbocharger speed.
689 190 2	Engine crankshaft speed/position - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected an error in the engine speed signal.	Possible reduced engine performance.
691 1172 3	Turbocharger 1 compressor inlet temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at turbocharger compressor inlet air temperature circuit.	Engine power derate.
692 1172 4	Turbocharger 1 compressor inlet temperature circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at turbocharger compressor inlet air temperature circuit.	Engine power derate.
693 1172 2	Turbocharger 1 compressor intake temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. A temperature too high or low for the operating conditions has been detected by the turbocharger compressor intake temperature sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
731 723 7	Engine speed / position camshaft and crankshaft misalignment - Mechanical system not responding properly or out of adjustment. Engine position signal from the crankshaft position sensor and camshaft position sensor do not match.	Engine power derate.
755 157 7	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ecm has detected a difference in the 2 fuel rail pressure signals.	Possible reduced engine performance.
778 723 2	Engine camshaft speed / position sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected an error in the camshaft position sensor signal.	Possible reduced engine performance.
784 1590 2	Adaptive cruise control mode - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Loss of communication with adaptive cruise control.	Adaptive cruise control will not operate. Standard cruise control may not operate.
1117 627 2	Power supply lost with ignition on - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Supply voltage to the ECM fell below 6.2 volts momentarily, or the ECM was not allowed to power down correctly (retain battery voltage for 30 seconds after key OFF).	Possible no noticeable performance.
1139 651 7	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 1 - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ECM has detected an error with the injection timing or quantity.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1141 652 7	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 2 - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ECM has detected an error with the injection timing or quantity.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1142 653 7	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 3 - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ECM has detected an error with the injection timing or quantity.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1143 654 7	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 4 - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ECM has detected an error with the injection timing or quantity.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1144 655 7	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 5 - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ECM has detected an error with the injection timing or quantity.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1145 656 7	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 6 - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ECM has detected an error with the injection timing or quantity.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1228 27 2	Egr valve position - Data erratic, intermittent, or Incorrect. The EGR valve is unable to meet commanded position.	Possible reduced engine performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
1239 2623 3	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 2 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at accelerator pedal position number 2 signal circuit.	The engine will operate in limp home mode.
1241 2623 4	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 2 circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at accelerator pedal position number 2 signal circuit.	The engine will operate in limp home mode.
1242 91 2	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 and 2 - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Accelerator position sensor number 1 and number 2 are reading different values.	The engine will only idle.
1515 91 19	Sae J1939 multiplexed accelerator pedal or lever sensor system - Received network data in error. The J1939 multiplexing controller has indicated a malfunction of the multiplexed accelerator pedal.	The engine will only idle.
1654 1323 31	Engine misfire cylinder 1- Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in cylinder number 1.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1655 1324 31	Engine misfire cylinder 2 - Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in cylinder number 2.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1656 1325 31	Engine misfire cylinder 3 - Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in cylinder number 3.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1657 1326 31	Engine misfire cylinder 4 - Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in cylinder number 4.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1658 1327 31	Engine misfire cylinder 5 - Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in cylinder number 5.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1659 1328 31	Engine misfire cylinder 6 - Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in cylinder number 6.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1668 1761 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1669 1761 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the catalyst tank level sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1673 1761 1	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level - Data valid but below normal operating range - Most severe level. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level has fallen below the critical warning level.	Possible reduced engine performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
1677 3031 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1678 3031 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at the diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1679 3031 2	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor has indicated a tank temperature too high or too low for the ambient conditions.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1682 3362 31	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit input lines - Condition exists. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit is unable to prime.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1683 3363 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1684 3363 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1691 100 18	Aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst conversion efficiency - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The temperature increase across the aftertreatment catalyst is lower than expected.	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.
1695 3513 3	Sensor supply 5 - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at sensor supply 5 circuit in the oem harness.	the engine will operate in limp home mode.
1696 3513 4	Sensor supply 5 - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at sensor supply number 5 circuit in the oem harness.	the engine will operate in limp home mode.
1712 3363 18	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater is unable to thaw the frozen diesel exhaust fluid.	Possible reduced engine performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
1713 3363 16	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The diesel exhaust fluid tank heater is continuously in the on position.	None on performance.
1718 1322 31	Engine misfire for multiple cylinders - Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in multiple cylinder numbers.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1776 2634 3	Power relay driver circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at power relay driver circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1777 2634 4	Power relay driver circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. An open circuit or low voltage has been detected at the power relay circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1843 101 3	Crankcase pressure circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the crankcase pressure circuit.	None on performance.
1844 101 4	Crankcase pressure circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the crankcase pressure circuit.	None on performance.
1866 411 2	Exhaust gas recirculation valve delta pressure - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. An error in the egr delta pressure signal was detected at initial key on or the sensor failed the autozero test.	possible reduced engine performance.
1867 412 2	Engine gas recircuilation temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Engine misfire has been detected in multiple cylinder numbers.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1879 3251 3	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment differential pressure sensor circuit.	possible reduced engine performance.
1881 3251 4	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage or open circuit detected at the aftertreatment differential pressure sensor circuit.	possible reduced engine performance.
1883 3251 2	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure sensor is reading an erratic value at initial key on or during engine operation.	possible reduced engine performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
1885 3216 4	Aftertreatment intake NOx sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. An internal circuit error has been detected by the aftertreatment intake NOx sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1887 3226 4	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. An internal circuit error has been detected by the aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1896 2791 13	EGR valve controller - Out of calibration. The EGR valve has failed the automatic calibration procedure at initial key ON.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1921 3251 0	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The soot load of the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter has exceeded the recommended limits.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1922 3251 0	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure - Data valid but above normal operating range - Most severe level. The soot load of the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter has exceeded the recommended limits. Engine protection derate is enabled.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1938 3597 1	Ecu power output supply voltage 1 - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Low battery voltage detected by the VGT actuator.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1942 101 2	Crankcase pressure - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected that the crankcase pressure signal is reading an erratic value at initial key ON or during engine operation.	None on performance.
1961 2791 0	EGR valve control circuit calculated over temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level. High EGR valve driver temperature has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1962 641 0	VGT Actuator driver over temperature (calculated) - Data valid but above normal operating range - Least severe level. High internal VGT actuator temperature has been detected.	None on performance.
1974 101 16	Crankcase pressure - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The crankcase breather filter requires maintenance.	None on performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
1993 4795 31	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter missing - Condition exists. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter in the exhaust system is not present.	Active aftertreatment diesel particulate filter regeneration will be disabled.
2185 3512 3	Sensor supply 4 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at 5 VDC sensor supply circuit to the accelerator pedal position sensor.	Engine will only idle.
2186 3512 4	Sensor supply 4 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at 5 VDC sensor supply circuit to the accelerator pedal position sensor.	Engine will only idle.
2198 641 11	VGT Actuator driver circuit - Root cause not known. Intermittent communication between the smart VGT controller and the ECM has been detected. The VGT controller is not interpreting the J1939 message from the ECM correctly.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2272 27 4	EGR Valve position circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage has been detected at the EGR valve position sensor circuit	Possible reduced engine performance.
2273 411 3	Exhaust gas recirculation valve delta pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the EGR differential pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2274 411 4	Exhaust gas recirculation valve delta pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the EGR differential pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2288 103 15	Turbocharger 1 speed - Data valid but above normal operating range - Least severe level. High turbocharger speed has been detected by the ECM.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2311 633 31	Electronic fuel injection control valve circuit - Condition exists. Fuel pump actuator circuit resistance too high or too low, or an intermittent connection has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2322 723 2	Engine camshaft speed / position sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Camshaft engine speed sensor intermittent synchronization.	None on performance.
2349 2791 5	EGR Valve control circuit - Current below normal or open circuit. Motor terminal or motor coil open circuit has been detected by the ECM.	Possible reduced engine performance.

 $\ensuremath{\,\times\,}$  Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
2353 2791 6	EGR Valve control circuit - Current above normal or grounded circuit. A short circuit to ground has been detected in the EGR valve motor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2372 95 16	Fuel filter differential pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Excessive fuel flow restriction to the high pressure fuel pump has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2373 1209 3	Exhaust gas pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the exhaust gas pressure circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2374 1209 4	Exhaust gas pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the exhaust gas pressure circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2375 412 3	Exhaust gas recirculation temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at EGR temperature circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2376 412 4	Exhaust gas recirculation temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at EGR temperature circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2377 647 3	Fan control circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. Open circuit or high voltage detected at the fan control circuit.	The fan can stay on continuously or <b>not</b> run at all.
2387 641 7	VGT Actuator driver circuit (motor) - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The smart VGT controller has detected incorrect stop limits, or the VGT is unable to move to the closed position.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2398 171 2	Ambient air temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ambient air temperature sensor is reading an erratic value.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2448 111 17	Coolant level - Data valid but below normal operational range - Least severe level. Low engine coolant level detected.	none on performance.
2449 641 13	Vgt actuator controller - Out of calibration. The VGT actuator has been installed incorrectly.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2468 102 3	Engine crankshaft speed/position - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The engine speed has exceeded a critical limit.	Engine will be shut down.
2554 1209 2	Exhaust gas pressure - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The exhaust gas pressure sensor is reading an erratic value.	possible reduced engine performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
2555 729 3	Intake air heater 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at the intake air heater signal circuit.	The intake air heaters may be ON or OFF all the time.
2556 729 4	Intake air heater 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at the intake air heater signal circuit.	The intake air heaters may be ON or OFF all the time.
2634 641 12	VGT Actuator controller - Bad intelligent device or component. An internal error has been detected by the smart VGT controller.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2636 641 9	VGT Actuator driver circuit - abnormal update rate. No communications on the J1939 data link between the engine ECM and the smart VGT controller.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2638 5298 17	Aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst conversion efficiency - Data valid but below normal operating range - Least severe level. The temperature increase across the aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst is lower than expected.	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.
2639 3251 15	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure - Data valid but above normal operating range - Least severe level. The soot load of the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter has exceeded the recommended limits.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2646 110 32	Engine coolant temperature - Condition exists. The EGR valve was closed to reduce engine coolant temperature.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2718 520325 31	Brake switch and accelerator pedal position incompatible - Condition exists. The ECM has detected the brake pedal and accelerator pedal were depressed simultaneously.	The engine will operate in limp home mode.
2771 3226 9	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor - Abnormal update rate. No communications or an invalid data transfer rate detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2777 3703 31	Particulate trap active regeneration inhibited due to inhibit switch - Condition exists. Regeneration of the diesel particulate filter has been prevented due to the permit switch being disabled.	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.
2961 412 15	Exhaust gas recirculation temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level. EGR temperature has exceeded the engine protection limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2962 412 16	Exhaust gas recirculation temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. EGR temperature has exceeded the engine protection limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.

 $\ensuremath{\,\times\,}$  Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
2963 110 15	Engine coolant temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level. Engine coolant temperature is above the engine protection warning limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the Engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
2964 105 15	Intake manifold 1 temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level. Intake manifold air temperature signal indicates intake manifold air temperature is above engine protection warning limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the Engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
2973 102 2	Intake manifold 1 pressure - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The intake manifold pressure sensor is reading an erratic value.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2976 3361 2	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. An internal error has been detected in the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3133 3610 3	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3134 3610 4	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3135 3610 2	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet pressure - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet pressure sensor is reading an erratic value at initial key ON or during engine operation.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3146 4363 3	Aftertreatment SCR outlet temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the SCR outlet temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3147 4363 4	Aftertreatment SCR outlet temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the SCR outlet temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3148 4363 2	Aftertreatment SCR outlet temperature sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The SCR outlet temperature sensor is not changing with engine operating conditions.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3151 4794 31	Aftertreatment SCR catalyst system missing - Condition exists. The aftertreatment SCR catalyst in the exhaust system is not present.	Possible reduced engine performance.

 $\ensuremath{\,\times\,}$  Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3165 4363 0	Aftertreatment SCR outlet temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. The SCR outlet temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3168 3936 16	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter system - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The system has detected a malfunction in the filtering capability of the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter.	None on performance.
3186 1623 9	Tachograph output shaft speed - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the tachograph output shaft speed sensor.	None on performance.
3213 1623 19	Tachograph output shaft speed - Received network data in error. The J1939 multiplexing controller has indicated a malfunction of the tachograph output shaft speed sensor.	None on performance.
3228 3216 2	Aftertreatment Intake NOx sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. An incorrect NOx sensor reading has been detected by the aftertreatment intake NOx sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3232 3216 9	Aftertreatment Intake NOx sensor - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the aftertreatment intake NOx sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3235 4363 16	Aftertreatment SCR outlet temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The SCR outlet temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum temperature limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3237 4340 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 1 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 1 circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3238 4340 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 1 circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3239 4342 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 2 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 2 circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3241 4342 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 2 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 2 circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3242 3363 7	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid temperature did not increase when the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater was commanded ON.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3243 3060 18	Engine cooling system monitor - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The engine is not warming up as expected.	None on performance.
3251 4765 16	Aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst intake temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The diesel oxidation catalyst intake temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum temperature limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the Engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
3253 3242 16	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the Engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
3254 3242 15	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Least severe level. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3255 3246 16	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
3256 3246 15	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Least severe level. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3258 4340 5	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 1 circuit - Current below normal or open circuit. Open circuit detected in the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 1.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3261 4342 5	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 2 circuit - Current below normal or open circuit. Open circuit detected in the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 2.	Possible reduced engine performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3311 3242 0	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Most severe level. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
3312 3246 0	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Most severe level. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
3313 4765 4	Aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst intake temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the catalyst intake sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3314 4765 3	Aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst intake temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the catalyst intake temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3315 4765 2	Aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst intake temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst intake temperature sensor is not changing with engine operating conditions.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3316 3242 4	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3317 3242 3	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3318 3242 2	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature is not changing with engine operating conditions.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3319 3246 3	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.

 $\ensuremath{\,\times\,}$  Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3321 3246 4	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3322 3246 2	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature is not changing with engine operating conditions.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3326 91 9	SAE J1939 Multiplexed accelerator pedal or lever sensor system - Abnormal update rate. The ECM expected information from a multiplexed accelerator pedal or lever sensor but did not receive it soon enough or did not receive it at all.	Engine will only idle.
3328 191 9	Transmission output shaft speed - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the transmission output shaft speed sensor.	None on performance.
3342 4752 18	Engine exhaust gas recirculation cooler efficiency - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The EGR cooler is not cooling the recirculated exhaust gas sufficiently.	None on performance.
3343 5285 18	Engine charge-air cooler efficiency - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The engine charge air cooler is not cooling the intake air flow sufficiently.	None on performance.
3361 102 10	Intake manifold 1 pressure - Abnormal rate of change. The VGT position reading is stuck.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3366 111 18	Coolant level - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Very low engine coolant level detected.	None on performance.
3374 1818 31	Roll over protection brake control active - Condition exists. The ECM received a message from the anti-lock braking (ABS) controller, inhibiting cruise control operation.	Cruise control could possibly not operate.
3375 5397 31	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter regeneration too frequent - Condition exists. The system has detected the need for an active regeneration has occurred too soon following the last active regeneration.	None on performance.
3376 5319 31	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter incomplete regeneration - Condition exists. The system has detected that the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure is too high following an active regeneration.	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3382 3058 18	Engine exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) system - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Measured egr flow is lower than commanded.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3383 3058 16	Engine exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) system - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe Level. Measured EGR flow is higher than commanded.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3394 4766 18	Aftertreatment 1 diesel oxidation catalyst outlet gas temperature - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The diesel oxidation catalyst outlet Temperature is below the operating limit	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.
3396 3750 31	Diesel particulate filter 1 conditions not met for active regeneration - Condition exists. The aftertreatment temperatures are not warm enough for aftertreatment injection.	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.
3418 191 19	Transmission output shaft speed - Received network data in error. The J1939 multiplexing controller has indicated a malfunction of the transmission output shaft speed sensor.	None on performance.
3422 4344 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 3 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 3 circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3423 4344 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 3 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 3 circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3425 4344 5	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 3 circuit - Current below normal or open circuit. Open circuit detected in the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 3.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3488 563 9	Anti-lock braking (ABS) controller - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the anti- lock braking (ABS) controller.	None on performance.
3492 251 10	Real time clock - Abnormal rate of change. The real time clock indicates a stuck engine off timer.	None on performance.
3494 1081 7	Engine wait to start lamp - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. Wait to Start lamp has malfunction.	None on performance.
3497 1761 17	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level - Data valid but below normal operating range - Least severe level. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level is low.	None on performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3498 1761 18	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level is very low.	None on performance.
3525 84 19	Wheel-based vehicle speed - Received network data in error. The J1939 multiplexing controller has indicated a malfunction of the wheel-based vehicle speed sensor.	Engine speed limited to maximum engine speed without VSS parameter value. Cruise control, gear-down protection, and road speed governor will not work.
3526 84 9	Wheel-Based vehicle speed - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the wheel- based vehicle speed sensor.	Engine speed limited to maximum engine speed without VSS parameter value. Cruise control, gear-down protection, and road speed governor will not work.
3527 558 19	Accelerator pedal or lever idle validation switch - Received network data in error. The J1939 multiplexing controller has indicated a malfunction of the accelerator pedal or lever idle validation switch.	The engine will only idle.
3528 558 9	Accelerator pedal or lever idle validation switch - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the accelerator pedal or lever idle validation switch.	Engine will only idle.
3531 171 9	Ambient air temperature - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the ambient air temperature sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3532 171 19	Ambient air temperature - Received network data in error. The J1939 multiplexing controller has indicated a malfunction of the ambient air temperature sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3539 51 3	Engine intake throttle actuator position sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the engine intake air throttle position sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3541 51 4	Engine intake throttle actuator position sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the engine intake air throttle position sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3542 51 2	Engine intake throttle actuator position sensor - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The engine intake air throttle posistion feedback is erratic or incorrect.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3545 3226 10	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor circuit - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor reading is not valid.	None on performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3547 4096 31	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank empty - Condition exists. The diesel exhaust fluid tank is empty.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3555 1081 9	Engine wait to start lamp - Abnormal update rate. A loss of communication has been detected.	None on performance.
3556 1081 19	Engine wait to start lamp - Received network data in error. The ECM received an invalid signal on the SAE J1939 datalink.	None on performance.
3558 3361 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3559 3361 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3562 5491 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater relay - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater relay.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3563 5491 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater relay - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater relay.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3567 5394 5	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing valve - Current below normal or open circuit. A circuit error has been detected in the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing valve circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3568 5394 7	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid (DEF) Dosing valve - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. A mechanical malfunction has been detected in the DEF dosing valve.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3571 4334 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3572 4334 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3574 4334 18	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Low diesel exhaust fluid pressure has been detected in the dosing unit.	Possible reduced engine performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3575 4334 16	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit has detected a blockage in the diesel exhaust fluid return flow.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3577 4376 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid return valve - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid return valve.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3578 4376 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid return valve - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid return valve.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3582 4364 18	Aftertreatment SCR catalyst conversion efficiency - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. NOx conversion across the SCR catalyst is too low.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3583 5031 10	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor heater - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor heater is unable to maintain its normal operating temperature.	None on performance.
3596 4334 2	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor has reported a reading too high or low for the operating conditions.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3649 5024 10	Aftertreatment Intake NOx sensor heater - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment intake NOx sensor heater is unable to maintain its normal operating temperature.	None on performance.
3681 3228 2	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor power supply - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor indicates that the power supply to the sensor is incorrect.	None on performance.
3682 3218 2	Aftertreatment Intake NOx sensor power supply - Data erratic, entermittent or encorrect. The aftertreatment intake NOx sensor indicates that the power supply to the sensor is incorrect.	None on performance.
3697 630 12	Engine control module calibration memory - Bad intelligent device or component. Error internal to the ECM related to engine software failures.	Engine may not start or may be difficult to start.
3712 5246 0	Aftertreatment SCR operator inducement - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. Critical SCR related fault codes have been active for an extended period of time and require immediate attention.	Vehicle speed will be limited to 8 km [5 miles] per hour.

 $\ensuremath{\,\times\,}$  Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3714 1569 31	Engine protection torque derate - Condition exists. Critical fault codes related to engine operation are active.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3715 188 16	Engine speed at idle - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The engine speed at idle has exceeded the governed idle speed.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3716 188 18	Engine speed at idle - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Engine is not maintaining the governed idle speed.	None on performance.
3717 3226 13	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor - Out of calibration. A calibration mismatch between the aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor and the ECM has been detected.	None on performance.
3718 3216 13	Aftertreatment intake NOx - Out of calibration. A calibration mismatch between the aftertreatment intake NOx sensor and the ECM has been detected.	None on performance.
3724 168 17	Battery 1 voltage - Data valid but below normal operating range - Least severe level. Low voltage to the EGR valve device driver has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3725 3216 10	Aftertreatment Intake NOx sensor - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment intake NOx sensor reading is not valid.	None on performance.
3727 5571 7	High pressure common rail fuel pressure relief valve - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The fuel rail high-pressure relief valve has opened at a lower than expected pressure.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3737 1675 31	Engine starter mode overcrank protection - Condition exists. The starter motor has been temporarily disabled in order to prevent starter damage.	Starter operation is prohibited until the starter motor has adequately cooled.
3741 5571 0	High pressure common rail fuel pressure relief valve - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. The fuel rail pressure relief valve has opened due to high fuel rail pressure.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
3749 3226 20	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor - Data not rational - Drifted high. An offset in the outlet NOx sensor reading has been detected.	None on performance.
3838 2978 9	Estimated engine parasitic losses - Percent torque - Abnormal update rate. A loss of communication has been detected.	None on performance.
3843 5603 9	Cruise control disable command - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the cruise control.	None on performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3844 5605 31	Cruise control pause command - Condition exists. The adaptive cruise control has dropped out and must be manually engaged.	Cruise control could possibly not operate.
3845 5603 31	Cruise control disable command - Condition exists. The adaptive cruise control has dropped out and must be manually engaged.	Cruise control could possibly not operate.
3899 5848 4	Aftertreatment 1 SCR Intermediate NH3 sensor - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. A circuit error has been detected in the NH3 sensor.	None on performance.
3911 5848 9	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 sensor - Abnormal update rate. Loss of communication with the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3912 5853 10	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 sensor heater - Abnormal rate of change. A malfunction of the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor heater has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3932 5851 16	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 gas sensor power supply - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. High battery voltage supply detected at the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3933 5851 18	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 gas sensor power supply - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Low battery voltage supply detected at the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3934 5851 2	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 gas sensor power supply - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. Intermittent battery voltage supply detected at the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor.	
3935 5848 13	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 sensor - Out of calibration. Incorrect trim resistance has been detected in the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3936 5848 12	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 sensor - Bad intelligent device or component. An internal error of the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3937 5848 10	Aftertreatment 1 SCR Intermediate NH3 sensor - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor reading is NOT valid.	Possible reduced engine performance.

 $\ensuremath{\,\times\,}$  Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
4149 2623 8	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 2 circuit frequency - Abnormal frequency or pulse width or period. The accelerator pedal position sensor reading is out of range.	The engine will operate in Limp Home mode.
4151 5742 9	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module - Abnormal update rate. No communications on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4152 5743 9	Aftertreatment selective catalytic reduction temperature sensor module - Abnormal update rate. No communications on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the aftertreatment SCR temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4155 5746 3	Aftertreatment 1 diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater relay - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater relay circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4156 5746 4	Aftertreatment 1 diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater relay - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater relay circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4157 4376 7	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid return valve - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. A stuck aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid return valve has been detected.	None on performance.
4158 5742 12	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module - Bad intelligent device or component. An internal error has been detected in the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4159 5743 12	Aftertreatment selective catalytic reduction temperature sensor module - Bad intelligent device or component. An internal error has been detected in the aftertreatment SCR temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4161 5742 3	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High battery supply voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4162 5742 4	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low battery supply voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
4163 5742 16	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module- Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. High internal temperature detected in the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4164 5743 3	Aftertreatment selective catalytic reduction temperature sensor module - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High battery supply voltage detected at the aftertreatment SCR temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4165 5743 4	Aftertreatment selective catalytic reduction temperature sensor module - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low battery supply voltage detected at the aftertreatment SCR temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4166 5743 16	Aftertreatment selective catalytic reduction temperature sensor module - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. High internal temperature detected in the aftertreatment SCR temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4168 5745 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. The aftertreatment diesel exhasut fluid dosing unit heater is detected to be stuck on.	None on performance.
4169 5745 5	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. The aftertreatment diesel exhasut fluid dosing unit heater is detected to be stuck off.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4171 5745 18	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit failed to thaw.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4213 3695 2	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter regeneration inhibit switch - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The diesel particulate filter regeneration permit switch is stuck in the OFF or INHIBIT position.	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.
4215 563 31	Anti-lock braking (ABS) Active - Condition exists. Cruise control was paused due to an anti-wheel slip message from teh ABS controller.	Adaptive cruise control will not operate. Standard cruise control may not operate.
4244 4337 2	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing temperature - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing temperature is irrational.	None on performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
4245 5798 2	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater temperature - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater temperature is irrational.	None on performance.
4249 4337 10	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing temperature - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit temperature is stuck.	None on performance.
4251 5798 10	Aftertreatment 1 diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater temperature - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater temperature sensor reading is stuck.	None on performance.
4252 1081 31	Engine wait to start lamp - Condition exists. The received signal does not match the commanded signal.	None on performance.
4259 5742 11	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module - Root cause not known. Intermittent battery voltage supply detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4261 5743 11	Aftertreatment selective catalytic reduction temperature sensor module - Root cause not known. Intermittent battery voltage supply detected at the aftertreatment SCR temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4279 5848 21	Aftertreatment 1 SCR Intermediate NH3 - Data not rational - Drifted low. An in range low failure has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4281 5848 2	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor reading is stuck.	None on performance.
4284 5793 9	Desired engine fueling state - Abnormal update rate. A valid message from the transmission ECU has NOT been received.	Engine may not start or may be difficult to start.
4289 91 8	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit frequency - Abnormal frequency or pulse width or period. The accelerator pedal position sensor reading is out of range.	The engine will operate in limp home mode.
4452 520668 31	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor closed loop operation - Condition exists. The maximum dosing adjustment has been reached.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4453 520669 31	Aftertreatment intermediate NH3 sensor closed loop operation - Condition exists. The maximum dosing adjustment has been reached.	None on performance.
4517 237 13	Vehicle Identification number - Out of calibration. The vehicle identification number has not been programmed into the ECM.	None on performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
4518 5862 3	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate gas temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftreatment SCR intermediate temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4519 5862 4	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate gas temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment SCR intermediate temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4521 5862 2	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate gas temperature sensor - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The aftertreatment SCR intermediate temperature sensor reading is irrational.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4524 5862 0	Aftertreatment SCR intermediate gas temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. The aftertreatment SCR intermediate temperature sensor reading is above the engine protection limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
4525 5862 16	Aftertreatment 1 SCR intermediate gas temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. High SCR Intermediate temperature detected.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
4526 521 2	Brake pedal position - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The values of the 2 brake switch signals do not match.	None on performance.
4572 3031 9	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature - Abnormal update rate. The ECM lost communication with the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4584 3936 14	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter system - Special instructions. The incorrect aftertreatment diesel particulate filter system has been installed with the engine.	Engine will be shut down.
4585 4792 14	Aftertreatment 1 SCR catalyst system - Special instructions. The incorrect SCR system has been Installed.	Engine will be shut down.
4612 520701 31	Engine intake manifold pressure system monitor - Condition exists. The engine is unable to meet the air handling system commands.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4658 4331 18	Aftertreatment SCR actual dosing reagent quantity - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Low aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid flow detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
4691 5585 18	Engine injector metering rail 1 cranking pressure - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The fuel rail pressure during cranking is too low for the engine to start.	Engine may not start or may be difficult to start.
4713 5357 31	Engine fuel injection quantity error for multiple cylinders - Condition exists. A malfunction of all fuel injectors has been detected.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
4726 1239 16	Engine fuel leakage - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Fuel rail pressure decay has been detected.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
4727 157 15	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data valid but above normal operating range - Least severe level. A self pumping condition has been detected in the fuel system.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4731 3031 13	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor - Out of calibration. The received datalink message was not valid.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4732 1761 13	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor - Out of calibration. The received datalink message was not valid.	None on performance.
4739 1761 11	Aftertreatment 1 diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor - Root cause not known. An unknown error has been detected with the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4769 1761 10	Aftertreatment 1 diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor - Abnormal rate of change. A valid diesel exhaust fluid tank level reading has NOT been received.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4865 6303 3	Engine coolant level 2 sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the engine coolant level 2 circuit.	None on performance.
4866 6303 4	Engine coolant level 2 sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the engine coolant level 2 circuit.	None on performance.
4956 520750 13	Engine variable geometry turbo (VGT) software - Out of calibration. VGT software does not match application.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4957 520750 31	Engine variable geometry turbo (VGT) software - Condition exists. The VGT actuator and ECM software is not compatible.	Possible reduced engine performance.

# 3) DEFINITION OF OPERATING MODES

### (1) Normal

There's no failure detected in the transmission system or the failure has no or slight effects on transmission control. TCU will work without or in special cases with little limitations. (See following table)

# (2) Substitute clutch control

TCU can't change the gears or the direction under the control of the normal clutch modulation.

TCU uses the substitute strategy for clutch control. All modulations are only time controlled. (Comparable with EST 25)

### (3) Limp-home

The detected failure in the system has strong limitations to transmission control. TCU can engage only one gear in each direction. In some cases only one direction will be possible.

TCU will shift the transmission into neutral at the first occurrence of the failure. First, the operator must shift the gear selector into neutral position.

If output speed is less than a threshold for neutral to gear and the operator shifts the gear selector into forward or reverse, the TCU will select the limp-home gear.

If output speed is less than a threshold for reversal speed and TCU has changed into the limphome gear and the operator selects a shuttle shift, TCU will shift immediately into the limp-home gear of the selected direction.

If output speed is greater than the threshold, TCU will shift the transmission into neutral.

The operator has to slow down the vehicle and must shift the gear selector into neutral position.

# (4) Transmission-shutdown

TCU has detected a severe failure that disables control of the transmission.

TCU will shut off the solenoid valves for the clutches and also the common power supply (VPS1). Transmission shifts to neutral.

The park brake will operate normally, also the other functions which use ADM1 to ADM8.

The operator has to slow down the vehicle. The transmission will stay in neutral.

### (5) TCU-shutdown

TCU has detected a severe failure that disables control of system.

TCU will shut off all solenoid valves and also both common power supplies (VPS1, VPS2).

The park brake will engage, also functions are disabled which use ADM 1 to ADM 8.

The transmission will stay in neutral.

#### ※ Abbreviations

- OC : Open circuit
- SC : Short circuit

OP mode : Operating mode

- TCU : Transmission control unit
- EEC : Electronic engine controller
- PTO : Power take off

# 4) TRANSMISSION FAULT CODES

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
				The control unit detects a voltage of < 7.00 volt (12 V device) or < 9.00 volt (24 volt device) on the supply input of terminal 30. 1. The alternator control unit has an internal defect. 2. Vehicle battery not sufficiently charged. 3. Wiring or plug connection defective (supply or	<ul> <li>The cause of the missing or insufficient voltage on terminal 30 must be located.</li> <li>1. Check the fuse of the terminal 30 control units.</li> <li>2. If the error occurs after a (sluggish) vehicle start, check the vehicle battery. Recharge the battery to ensure that it is sufficiently charged.</li> <li>3. Make sure that the control unit has a stable voltage supply. Check the stability of the voltage with Testman.</li> <li>4. Check the wiring between the alternator and the control unit, in particular with regard to defective plug connections such as corroded or damaged plug contacts. Pay special attention to the ground wiring.</li> <li>5. Check the function of the alternator as well as the</li> </ul>
523000	1	Battery low undervoltage	Trm Shutdown	ground cable). 4. Control unit parameters incorrectly set.	settings of the alternator control unit and replace both if necessary.
				The control unit detects a voltage of > 18.00 volt (12 volt device) or > 32.50 volt (24 volt device) on the supply input terminal 30. 1. The alternator control unit has an internal defect. 2. Wiring or plug connection defective (supply or ground cable).	The cause of the excessive voltage on terminal 30 must be located. 1. Make sure that the control unit has a stable voltage supply. Check the voltage on the terminal tester with a voltmeter. • Target voltage ignition ON: Vehicle power supply. • Target voltage ignition OFF: Vehicle power supply. 2. With the ignition off, use a voltmeter to check the voltage on the connection of terminal 30 (steady plus) to terminal 31 (ground). The measured voltage must correspond to the vehicle power supply. 3. With the engine running, check the voltage in the same manner as described in the point above. The measured voltage must correspond to the vehicle power supply.
523000	3	Battery overvoltage	Trm Shutdown	3. Control unit parameters incorrectly set.	4. Check the wiring between the alternator and the

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					control unit, in particular with regard to defective plug
					connections such as corroded or damaged plug
					contacts. Pay special attention to the ground wiring.
					5. Check the function of the alternator as well as the
					settings of the alternator control unit and replace both
					if necessary.
					The cause of the missing or insufficient voltage on
					terminal 30 must be located.
					1. Check the fuse of the terminal 30 control units.
					2. If the error occurs after a (sluggish) vehicle start,
					check the vehicle battery. Recharge the battery to
					ensure that it is sufficiently charged.
				The control unit detects a voltage of < 9.00 volt	3. Make sure that the control unit has a stable voltage
				(12 V device) or < 16.00 volt (24 volt device) on	supply. Check the stability of the voltage with Testman.
				the supply input terminal 30.	4. Check the wiring between the alternator and the
				1. The alternator control unit has an internal	control unit, in particular with regard to defective plug
				defect.	connections such as corroded or damaged plug
				2. Vehicle battery not sufficiently charged.	contacts. Pay special attention to the ground wiring.
				3. Wiring or plug connection defective (supply or	5. Check the function of the alternator as well as the
				ground cable).	settings of the alternator control unit and replace both
523000	4	Battery undervoltage	Trm Shutdown	4. Control unit parameters incorrectly set.	if necessary.
					The cause of the incorrect voltage must be located.
					1. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
					defective plug connections such as corroded or
					damaged plug contacts.
					2. Check the correct wiring of the pins.
				The measured voltage is too high.	3. Check the function of the sensor or replace the
		EC3: Supply for speed		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	sensor.
		sensors (AU3)		2. Sensor has an internal defect.	4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523020	3	overvoltage	Trm Shutdown	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
523020	4	EC3: Supply for speed	Trm Shutdown	The measured voltage is too low.	The cause of the incorrect voltage must be located.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
		sensors (AU3)		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	1. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
1		undervoltage		2. Sensor has an internal defect.	defective plug connections such as corroded or
1				3. Control unit has an internal defect.	damaged plug contacts.
					2. Check the correct wiring of the pins.
1					3. Check the function of the sensor or replace the
					sensor.
1					4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
				The measured line resistance between the	
1				connected component and the control unit is too	1. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
1				high or the voltage on the control unit output is	measure the resistance of the connected component
1				too low.	using a terminal tester.
1				1. Wiring or plug connection contacts vehicle	2. Check the wiring between the connected
1				ground.	component and the control unit, in particular with
1				2. Component has an internal defect.	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
1				3. Control unit has an internal defect.	or damaged plug contacts.
1				Note: If this error occurs, calculations are	3. Check the function of the connected component and
1		EC3: Supply for speed		partially being made with replacement values.	replace it if needed.
1		sensors (AU3) short to		The transmission functions are limited and the	4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523020	6	ground	Trm Shutdown	shifting quality is reduced.	occur.
1					The cause of the incorrect voltage must be located.
1		EC3: Supply for			1. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
1		temperature sensors			defective plug connections such as corroded or
1		and oil filter restriction			damaged plug contacts.
1		switch (AU2)			2. Check the correct wiring of the pins.
1		overvoltage		The measured voltage is too high.	3. Check the function of the sensor or replace the
1		EC4: Supply for speed		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	sensor.
1		sensors (AU2)		2. Sensor has an internal defect.	4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523021	3	overvoltage	Trm Shutdown	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
		EC3: Supply for		The measured voltage is too low.	The cause of the incorrect voltage must be located.
523021	4	temperature sensors	Trm Shutdown	1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	1. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
		and oil filter restriction		2. Sensor has an internal defect.	defective plug connections such as corroded or
		switch (AU2)		3. Control unit has an internal defect.	damaged plug contacts.
		undervoltage			2. Check the correct wiring of the pins.
		EC4: Supply for speed			3. Check the function of the sensor or replace the
		sensors (AU2)			sensor.
		undervoltage			4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
				The measured line resistance between the	
				connected component and the control unit is too	1. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is	measure the resistance of the connected component
				too low.	using a terminal tester.
		EC3: Supply for		1. Wiring or plug connection contacts vehicle	2. Check the wiring between the connected
		temperature sensors		ground.	component and the control unit, in particular with
		and oil filter restriction		2. Component has an internal defect.	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
		switch (AU2) short to		3. Control unit has an internal defect.	or damaged plug contacts.
		ground		Note: If this error occurs, calculations are	3. Check the function of the connected component and
		EC4: Supply for speed		partially being made with replacement values.	replace it if needed.
		sensors (AU2) short to		The transmission functions are limited and the	4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523021	. 6	ground	Trm Shutdown	shifting quality is reduced.	occur.
					The cause of the incorrect voltage must be located.
					1. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
					defective plug connections such as corroded or
					damaged plug contacts.
					2. Check the correct wiring of the pins.
				The measured voltage is too high.	3. Check the function of the sensor or replace the
		EC4: Supply for oil filter		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	sensor.
		restriction switch (AU1)		2. Sensor has an internal defect.	4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523022	3	overvoltage	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
		EC4: Supply for oil filter		The measured voltage is too low.	The cause of the incorrect voltage must be located.
		restriction switch (AU1)		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	1. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
523022	. 4	undervoltage	Limp Home	2. Sensor has an internal defect.	defective plug connections such as corroded or

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
				3. Control unit has an internal defect.	damaged plug contacts.
					2. Check the correct wiring of the pins.
					3. Check the function of the sensor or replace the
					sensor.
					4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
					using a terminal tester.
				The measured line resistance between the	2. Check the wiring between the connected
				connected component and the control unit is too	component and the control unit, in particular with
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
				too low.	or damaged plug contacts.
				1. Wiring or plug connection contacts vehicle	3. Check the function of the connected component and
		EC4: Supply for oil filter		ground.	replace it if needed.
		restriction switch (AU1)		2. Component has an internal defect.	4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523022	6	short to ground	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
					The cause of the incorrect voltage must be located.
					1. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
					defective plug connections such as corroded or
					damaged plug contacts.
					2. Check the correct wiring of the pins.
				The measured voltage is too high.	3. Check the function of the connected component or
		Propvalve power		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	replace the component.
		supply 1 (VPS1)		2. Component has an internal defect.	4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523030	3	overvoltage	TCU Shutdown	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
					The cause of the incorrect voltage must be located.
				The measured voltage is too high.	1. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
		Propvalve power		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	defective plug connections such as corroded or
		supply 2 (VPS2)		2. Component has an internal defect.	damaged plug contacts.
523031	3	overvoltage	TCU Shutdown	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	2. Check the correct wiring of the pins.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					3. Check the function of the connected component or
					replace the component.
					4. Replace the control unit if the error continues
					to occur.
					The cause of the increased temperature input in the
					control unit must be located.
				The measured temperature on the control unit	1. Check if outside influences have caused the
				of the transmission is too high.	excessive temperature.
				1. Overheating due to outside influences.	2. If the error continues to occur then the control unit
523040	0	TCU overtemperature	TCU Shutdown	2. Temperature sensor has an internal defect.	needs to be replaced.
				The measured temperature on the control unit	
		TCU temperature		of the transmission is invalid.	
523040	2	invalid value	TCU Shutdown	1. Control unit has an internal defect.	1. Replace the control unit.
				There are 3 startup self-tests concerning power	
				lines	
				1. Watch dog cut-off test – WD chip allow VPS to	
				be enabled only if it is activated (armed) and	
				disable all VPSs before it resets MCU. The self-	The cause of the incorrect behavour must be located.
				test check it.	1.Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
				2. VPS cut off test – SW is able to control VPS via	defective plug connections such as corroded or
				power supply manager component – self test	damaged plug contacts.
				check it	2.Check the correct wiring of the pins.
				3 OCG off test – it check if when VPS is on and	3.Check the function of the connected component or
				OCG/AIM channels are disable (requested	replace the component.
				current = 0), there really is no current on the	4.Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523044	12	Internal TCU Error 5	TCU Shutdown	lines.	occur.
					Read out the operating data with Testman and send
523045	12	Internal TCU Error 1	TCU Shutdown	The control unit detects an internal error.	them to your ZF contact.
					Read out the operating data with Testman and send
523046	12	Internal TCU Error 2	TCU Shutdown	The control unit detects an internal error.	them to your ZF contact.
523049	12	Unknown transmission	TCU Shutdown	Wrong TCU mounted. The TCU doesn't fit to the	Contact your ZF representative.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
		controller hardware		application.	
		detected			
					The cause of the incorrect voltage must be located.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
					defective plug connections such as corroded or
					damaged plug contacts.
					3. Check the correct wiring of the pins.
				The measured voltage at the input is too high.	4. Check the function of the connected component or
		Speed sensor input 1		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	replace the component.
		(EF1) overvoltage:		2. Component has an internal defect.	5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523100	3	Turbine speed	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
					using a terminal tester.
					2. Check the wiring between the connected
					component and the control unit, in particular with
				The measured line resistance between the	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
				connected component and the control unit is too	or damaged plug contacts.
				high.	3. Check the function of the connected component and
		Speed sensor input 1		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	replace it if needed.
		(EF1) open or short to		2. Component has an internal defect.	4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523100	6	ground: Turbine speed	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
					The cause of the unknown rotational direction must be
				The control unit does not recognize the	located.
				rotational direction at the input.	1. Check the wiring from the sensor to the control unit,
		Speed sensor input 1		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	in particular with regard to defective plug connections
		(EF1) direction of		2. Wiring or plug connection has a poor contact.	such as corroded or damaged plug contacts.
		rotation unknown:		3. Distance sensor – sensor ring too large.	2. Check the function of the sensor and, if necessary,
523100	8	Turbine speed	Limp Home	4. Sensor has an internal defect.	replace it.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					The cause of the unknown speed must be located.
				The control unit does not recognize the speed at	1. Check the wiring from the speed sensor to the
				the input.	control unit, in particular with regard to defective plug
				1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	connections such as corroded or damaged plug
		Speed sensor input 1		2. Wiring or plug connection has a poor contact.	contacts.
		(EF1) speed unknown:		3. Distance speed sensor – sensor ring too large.	2. Check the function of the sensor and, if necessary,
523100	9	Turbine speed	Limp Home	4. Speed sensor has an internal defect.	replace it.
					The cause of the incorrect voltage must be located.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
					defective plug connections such as corroded or
					damaged plug contacts.
					3. Check the correct wiring of the pins.
				The measured voltage at the input is too high.	4. Check the function of the connected component or
		Speed sensor input 2		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	replace the component.
		(EF2) overvoltage:		2. Component has an internal defect.	5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523105	3	Internal speed	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
					using a terminal tester.
					2. Check the wiring between the connected
					component and the control unit, in particular with
				The measured line resistance between the	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
				connected component and the control unit is too	or damaged plug contacts.
				high.	3. Check the function of the connected component and
		Speed sensor input 2		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	replace it if needed.
		(EF2) open or short to		2. Component has an internal defect.	4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523105		ground: Internal speed	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
		Speed sensor input 2		The control unit does not recognize the	The cause of the unknown rotational direction must be
523105	8	(EF2) direction of	Limp Home	rotational direction at the input.	located.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
		rotation unknown:		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	1. Check the wiring from the sensor to the control unit,
		Internal speed		2. Wiring or plug connection has a poor contact.	in particular with regard to defective plug connections
				3. Distance sensor – sensor ring too large.	such as corroded or damaged plug contacts.
				4. Sensor has an internal defect.	<ol><li>Check the function of the sensor and, if necessary, replace it.</li></ol>
					The cause of the unknown speed must be located.
				The control unit does not recognize the speed at	1. Check the wiring from the speed sensor to the
				the input.	control unit, in particular with regard to defective plug
				1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	connections such as corroded or damaged plug
		Speed sensor input 2		2. Wiring or plug connection has a poor contact.	contacts.
		(EF2) speed unknown:		3. Distance speed sensor – sensor ring too large.	2. Check the function of the sensor and, if necessary,
523105	9	Internal speed	Limp Home	4. Speed sensor has an internal defect.	replace it.
					The cause of the incorrect voltage must be located.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
					defective plug connections such as corroded or
					damaged plug contacts.
					3. Check the correct wiring of the pins.
				The measured voltage at the input is too high.	4. Check the function of the connected component or
		Speed sensor input 3		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	replace the component.
		(EF3) overvoltage:		2. Component has an internal defect.	5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523110	3	Output speed	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
				The measured line resistance between the	using a terminal tester.
				connected component and the control unit is too	2. Check the wiring between the connected
				high.	component and the control unit, in particular with
		Speed sensor input 3		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
		(EF3) open or short to		2. Component has an internal defect.	or damaged plug contacts.
523110	6	ground: Output speed	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	3. Check the function of the connected component and

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					replace it if needed.
					4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
					The cause of the unknown rotational direction must be
				The control unit does not recognize the	located.
				rotational direction at the input.	1. Check the wiring from the sensor to the control unit,
		Speed sensor input 3		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	in particular with regard to defective plug connections
		(EF3) direction of		2. Wiring or plug connection has a poor contact.	such as corroded or damaged plug contacts.
		rotation unknown:		3. Distance sensor – sensor ring too large.	2. Check the function of the sensor and, if necessary,
523110	8	Output speed	Limp Home	4. Sensor has an internal defect.	replace it.
					The cause of the unknown speed must be located.
				The control unit does not recognize the speed at	1. Check the wiring from the speed sensor to the
				the input.	control unit, in particular with regard to defective plug
				1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	connections such as corroded or damaged plug
		Speed sensor input 3		2. Wiring or plug connection has a poor contact.	contacts.
		(EF3) speed unknown:		3. Distance speed sensor – sensor ring too large.	2. Check the function of the sensor and, if necessary,
523110	9	Output speed	Limp Home	4. Speed sensor has an internal defect.	replace it.
					The cause of the incorrect voltage must be located.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
					defective plug connections such as corroded or
					damaged plug contacts.
					3. Check the correct wiring of the pins.
				The measured voltage at the input is too high.	4. Check the function of the connected component or
		Speed sensor input 4		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	replace the component.
		(EF4) overvoltage:		2. Component has an internal defect.	5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523115	3	Engine speed	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
		Speed sensor input 4		The measured line resistance between the	1. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
		(EF4) open or short to		connected component and the control unit is too	measure the resistance of the connected component
523115	6	ground: Engine speed	Limp Home	high.	using a terminal tester.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
				1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	2. Check the wiring between the connected
				2. Component has an internal defect.	component and the control unit, in particular with
				3. Control unit has an internal defect.	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
					or damaged plug contacts.
					3. Check the function of the connected component and
					replace it if needed.
					4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
					The cause of the unknown rotational direction must be
				The control unit does not recognize the	located.
				rotational direction at the input.	1. Check the wiring from the sensor to the control unit,
		Speed sensor input 4		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	in particular with regard to defective plug connections
		(EF4) direction of		2. Wiring or plug connection has a poor contact.	such as corroded or damaged plug contacts.
		rotation unknown:		3. Distance sensor – sensor ring too large.	2. Check the function of the sensor and, if necessary,
523115	8	Engine speed	Limp Home	4. Sensor has an internal defect.	replace it.
					The cause of the unknown speed must be located.
				The control unit does not recognize the speed at	1. Check the wiring from the speed sensor to the
				the input.	control unit, in particular with regard to defective plug
				1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	connections such as corroded or damaged plug
		Speed sensor input 4		2. Wiring or plug connection has a poor contact.	contacts.
		(EF4) speed unknown:		3. Distance speed sensor – sensor ring too large.	2. Check the function of the sensor and, if necessary,
523115	9	Engine speed	Limp Home	4. Speed sensor has an internal defect.	replace it.
					1. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
					using a terminal tester.
				The measured line resistance between the	2. Check the wiring between the connected
				connected component and the control unit is too	component and the control unit, in particular with
		Resistance sensor input		high.	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
		1 (ER1) open circuit or		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	or damaged plug contacts.
		short to high source:		2. Component has an internal defect.	3. Check the function of the connected component and
523140	3	Sump temperature	Normal	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	replace it if needed.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
					using a terminal tester.
				The measured line resistance between the	2. Check the wiring between the connected
				connected component and the control unit is too	component and the control unit, in particular with
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
				too low.	or damaged plug contacts.
		Resistance sensor input		1. Wiring or plug connection contacts vehicle	3. Check the function of the connected component and
		1 (ER1) short to		ground.	replace it if needed.
		ground: Sump		2. Component has an internal defect.	4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523140	6	temperature	Normal	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
					The cause of the incorrect voltage must be located.
					1. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
					defective plug connections such as corroded or
					damaged plug contacts.
					2. Check the correct wiring of the pins.
		Current sensor input 2		The measured voltage at the input is too high.	3. Check the function of the connected component or
		(EI2) overvoltage:		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	replace the component.
		Oil Filter Restriction		2. Component has an internal defect.	4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523155	3	Switch	Normal	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
					using a terminal tester.
				The measured line resistance between the	2. Check the wiring between the connected
		Current seonsr input 2			component and the control unit, in particular with
		(EI2) open circuit or		high.	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
		short to ground:		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	or damaged plug contacts.
		Oil Filter Restriction		2. Component has an internal defect.	3. Check the function of the connected component and
523155	6	Switch	Normal	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	replace it if needed.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
				The measured voltage at the sensor input 3 is	
				too high:	
				cable is defective and is contacted to battery	
				voltage clutch cut off / inch pedal sensor has an	check the cable from TCU to the sensor
		Voltage sensor input 3		internal defect connector pin is contacted to	check the connectors
523160	3	(EU3) overvoltage	TCU Shutdown	battery voltage.	3 check the sensor
				The measured voltage at the sensor input 3 is	
				too low:	
				cable is defective and is contacted to vehicle	
				ground cable has no connection to TCU clutch	
		Voltage sensor input 3		cut off / inch pedal sensor has an internal defect	1 check the cable from TCU to the sensor
		(EU3) open or short to		connector pin is contacted to vehicle ground or	2 check the connectors
523160	6	ground	TCU Shutdown	is broken.	3 check the sensor
		Voltage sensor input 3		The measured sensor voltage is out of the	check the cable from TCU to the sensor check the
523160	12	(EU3) defect	TCU Shutdown	allowed thresholds.	connectors check the sensor 4 Change the sensor
				The measured voltage at the sensor input 3 is	
				too high:	
				cable is defective and is contacted to battery	
				voltage clutch cut off / inch pedal sensor has an	1 check the cable from TCU to the sensor
		Voltage sensor input 4		internal defect connector pin is contacted to	2 check the connectors
523165	3	(EU4) overvoltage	Normal	battery voltage.	3 check the sensor
				The measured voltage at the sensor input 3 is	
				too low:	
				cable is defective and is contacted to vehicle	
				ground cable has no connection to TCU clutch	
		Voltage sensor input 4		cut off / inch pedal sensor has an internal defect	1 check the cable from TCU to the sensor
		(EU4) open or short to		connector pin is contacted to vehicle ground or	2 check the connectors
523165	6	ground	Normal	is broken.	3 check the sensor
523165	12	Voltage sensor input 4	Normal	The measured sensor voltage is out of the	check the cable from TCU to the sensor check the

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
		(EU4) defect		allowed thresholds.	connectors check the sensor 4 Change the sensor
					1. Using the circuit diagram, check if a component is
					assigned to the output.
					2. Check the wiring, in particular that it is wired
					correctly.
					3. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
					defective plug connections such as corroded or
		Current output driver 1		If this error occurs, then an electrical component	damaged plug contacts
		(AIM01) unknown		has been connected at the output although the	4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523200	2	electrical component	Trm Shutdown	input should not be used.	occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
					using a terminal tester.
				The measured line resistance between the	3. Check the wiring between the connected
				proportional valve and the control unit is too	component and the control unit, in particular with
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
				too high.	or damaged plug contacts.
				1. Wiring or plug connection contacts battery	4. Check the function of the connected component and
		Current output driver 1		voltage.	replace it if needed.
		(AIM01) short to		2. Proportional valve has an internal defect.	5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523200	3	battery	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
				The measured line resistance between the	2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
				connected component and the control unit is too	measure the resistance of the connected component
				high.	using a terminal tester.
				1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	3. Check the wiring between the connected
		Current output driver 1		2. Component has an internal defect.	component and the control unit, in particular with
523200	5	(AIM01) open circuit	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					or damaged plug contacts.
					4. Check the function of the connected component and
					replace it if needed.
					5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
					using a terminal tester.
				The measured line resistance between the	3. Check the wiring between the connected
				connected component and the control unit is too	component and the control unit, in particular with
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
				too low.	or damaged plug contacts.
				1. Wiring or plug connection contacts vehicle	4. Check the function of the connected component and
		Current output driver 1		ground.	replace it if needed.
		(AIM01) short to		2. Component has an internal defect.	5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523200	6	ground	TCU Shutdown	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Check if the error occurs with an additional
					proportional valve or with which valve the error is
					bypassed.
				The measured line resistance between the	3. Check the wiring between the proportional valve
				proportional valve and the control unit is too	and the control unit, in particular with regard to
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is	defective plug connections such as corroded or
l				too low.	damaged plug contacts.
ļ				1. Wiring or plug connection contacts another	4. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit, and
ļ		Current output driver 1		proportional valve.	measure the resistance of the proportional valve using
	_	(AIM01) short to		2. Proportional valve has an internal defect.	a terminal tester.
523200	8	another valve	Trm Shutdown	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	5. Check the function of the proportional valve and

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					replace it if needed.
					6. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
					1. Using the circuit diagram, check if a component is
					assigned to the output.
					2. Check the wiring, in particular that it is wired
					correctly.
					3. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
					defective plug connections such as corroded or
		Current output driver 2		If this error occurs, then an electrical component	damaged plug contacts
		(AIM02) unknown		has been connected at the output although the	4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523205	2	electrical component	Trm Shutdown	input should not be used.	occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
					using a terminal tester.
				The measured line resistance between the	3. Check the wiring between the connected
				connected component and the control unit is too	component and the control unit, in particular with
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
				too high.	or damaged plug contacts.
				1. Wiring or plug connection contacts battery	4. Check the function of the connected component and
		Current output driver 2		voltage.	replace it if needed.
		(AIM02) short to		2. Component has an internal defect.	5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523205	3	battery	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
				The measured line resistance between the	1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
				connected component and the control unit is too	the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
				high.	2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
				1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	measure the resistance of the connected component
		Current output driver 2		2. Component has an internal defect.	using a terminal tester.
523205	5	(AIM02) open circuit	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	3. Check the wiring between the connected

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					component and the control unit, in particular with
					regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
					or damaged plug contacts.
					4. Check the function of the connected component and
					replace it if needed.
					5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
					using a terminal tester.
				The measured line resistance between the	3. Check the wiring between the connected
				connected component and the control unit is too	component and the control unit, in particular with
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
				too low.	or damaged plug contacts.
				1. Wiring or plug connection contacts vehicle	4. Check the function of the connected component and
		Current output driver 2		ground.	replace it if needed.
		(AIM02) short to		2. Component has an internal defect.	5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523205	6	ground	TCU Shutdown	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Check if the error occurs with an additional
				The measured line resistance between the	proportional valve or with which valve the error is
				proportional valve and the control unit is too	bypassed.
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is	3. Check the wiring between the proportional valve
				too low.	and the control unit, in particular with regard to
				1. Wiring or plug connection contacts another	defective plug connections such as corroded or
		Current output driver 2		proportional valve.	damaged plug contacts.
		(AIM02) short circuit to		2. Proportional valve has an internal defect.	4. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit, and
523205	8	another valve	Trm Shutdown	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	measure the resistance of the proportional valve using

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					a terminal tester.
					5. Check the function of the proportional valve and
					replace it if needed.
					6. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
					1. Using the circuit diagram, check if a component is
					assigned to the output.
					2. Check the wiring, in particular that it is wired
					correctly.
					3. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
					defective plug connections such as corroded or
		Current output driver 3		If this error occurs, then an electrical component	damaged plug contacts
		(AIM03) unknown		has been connected at the output although the	4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523210	2	electrical component	Trm Shutdown	input should not be used.	occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
					using a terminal tester.
				The measured line resistance between the	3. Check the wiring between the connected
				connected component and the control unit is too	component and the control unit, in particular with
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
				too high.	or damaged plug contacts.
				1. Wiring or plug connection contacts battery	4. Check the function of the connected component and
		Current output driver 3		voltage.	replace it if needed.
		(AIM03) short to		2. Component has an internal defect.	5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523210	3	battery	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
	1			The measured line resistance between the	1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
	1			•	the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
	1	Current output driver 3		high.	2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
523210	5	(AIM03) open circuit	Limp Home	1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	measure the resistance of the connected component

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
				2. Component has an internal defect.	using a terminal tester.
				3. Control unit has an internal defect.	3. Check the wiring between the connected
					component and the control unit, in particular with
					regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
					or damaged plug contacts.
					4. Check the function of the connected component and replace it if needed.
					5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
					using a terminal tester.
				The measured line resistance between the	3. Check the wiring between the connected
				connected component and the control unit is too	component and the control unit, in particular with
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
				too low.	or damaged plug contacts.
		Current output driver 3		<ol> <li>Wiring or plug connection contacts vehicle ground.</li> </ol>	4. Check the function of the connected component and replace it if needed.
		(AIM03) short to		2. Component has an internal defect.	5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523210	6	ground	TCU Shutdown	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
				The measured line resistance between the	the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
				proportional valve and the control unit is too	2. Check if the error occurs with an additional
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is	proportional valve or with which valve the error is
ſ				too low.	bypassed.
				1. Wiring or plug connection contacts another	3. Check the wiring between the proportional valve
		Current output driver 3		proportional valve.	and the control unit, in particular with regard to
		(AIM03) short circuit to		2. Proportional valve has an internal defect.	defective plug connections such as corroded or
523210	8	another valve	Trm Shutdown	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	damaged plug contacts.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					4. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit, and
					measure the resistance of the proportional valve using
					a terminal tester.
					5. Check the function of the proportional valve and
					replace it if needed.
					6. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
					1. Using the circuit diagram, check if a component is
					assigned to the output.
					2. Check the wiring, in particular that it is wired
					correctly.
					3. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
					defective plug connections such as corroded or
		Current output driver 4		If this error occurs, then an electrical component	damaged plug contacts
		(AIM04) unknown		has been connected at the output although the	4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523215	2	electrical component	Trm Shutdown	input should not be used.	occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
					using a terminal tester.
				The measured line resistance between the	3. Check the wiring between the connected
				connected component and the control unit is too	component and the control unit, in particular with
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
				too high.	or damaged plug contacts.
				1. Wiring or plug connection contacts battery	4. Check the function of the connected component and
		Current output driver 4		voltage.	replace it if needed.
		(AIM04) short to		2. Component has an internal defect.	5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523215	3	battery	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
		Current output driver 4		The measured line resistance between the	1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
523215	5	(AIM04) open circuit	Limp Home	connected component and the control unit is too	the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
				high.	2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
				1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	measure the resistance of the connected component
				2. Component has an internal defect.	using a terminal tester.
				3. Control unit has an internal defect.	3. Check the wiring between the connected
					component and the control unit, in particular with
					regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
					or damaged plug contacts.
					4. Check the function of the connected component and
					replace it if needed.
					5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
					using a terminal tester.
				The measured line resistance between the	3. Check the wiring between the connected
				connected component and the control unit is too	component and the control unit, in particular with
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is too low.	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded or damaged plug contacts.
				1. Wiring or plug connection contacts vehicle	4. Check the function of the connected component and
		Current output driver 4		ground.	replace it if needed.
		(AIM04) short to		2. Component has an internal defect.	5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523215	6	ground	TCU Shutdown	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
				The measured line resistance between the	1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
				proportional valve and the control unit is too	the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is	2. Check if the error occurs with an additional
				too low.	proportional valve or with which valve the error is
		Current output driver 4		1. Wiring or plug connection contacts another	bypassed.
		(AIM04) short circuit to		proportional valve.	3. Check the wiring between the proportional valve
523215	8	another valve	Trm Shutdown	2. Proportional valve has an internal defect.	and the control unit, in particular with regard to

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
				3. Control unit has an internal defect.	defective plug connections such as corroded or
					damaged plug contacts.
					4. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit, and
					measure the resistance of the proportional valve using
					a terminal tester.
					5. Check the function of the proportional valve and
					replace it if needed.
					6. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
					1. Using the circuit diagram, check if a component is
					assigned to the output.
					2. Check the wiring, in particular that it is wired
					correctly.
					3. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
					defective plug connections such as corroded or
		Current output driver 5		If this error occurs, then an electrical component	damaged plug contacts
	_	(AIM05) unknown		has been connected at the output although the	4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523220	2	electrical component	Trm Shutdown	input should not be used.	occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
					using a terminal tester.
				The measured line resistance between the	3. Check the wiring between the connected
				connected component and the control unit is too	component and the control unit, in particular with
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
				too high.	or damaged plug contacts.
		Current output driver 5		1. Wiring or plug connection contacts battery	4. Check the function of the connected component and
		Current output driver 5		voltage. 2. Component has an internal defect.	replace it if needed.
E 22220		(AIM05) short to	Limn Homo		5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523220	3	battery	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component using a terminal tester.
					3. Check the wiring between the connected
					component and the control unit, in particular with
				The measured line resistance between the	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
				connected component and the control unit is too	or damaged plug contacts.
				high.	4. Check the function of the connected component and
				1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	replace it if needed.
		Current output driver 5		2. Component has an internal defect.	5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523220	5	(AIM05) open circuit	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
					using a terminal tester.
				The measured line resistance between the	3. Check the wiring between the connected
				connected component and the control unit is too	component and the control unit, in particular with
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is too low.	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded or damaged plug contacts.
				1. Wiring or plug connection contacts vehicle	4. Check the function of the connected component and
		Current output driver 5		ground.	replace it if needed.
		(AIM05) short to		2. Component has an internal defect.	5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523220	6	ground	TCU Shutdown	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
		-		The measured line resistance between the	1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
				proportional valve and the control unit is too	the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
		Current output driver 5		high or the voltage on the control unit output is	2. Check if the error occurs with an additional
		(AIM05) short circuit to		too low.	proportional valve or with which valve the error is
523220	8	another valve	Trm Shutdown	1. Wiring or plug connection contacts another	bypassed.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
				proportional valve.	3. Check the wiring between the proportional valve
				2. Proportional valve has an internal defect.	and the control unit, in particular with regard to
				3. Control unit has an internal defect.	defective plug connections such as corroded or
					damaged plug contacts.
					4. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit, and
					measure the resistance of the proportional valve using
					a terminal tester.
					5. Check the function of the proportional valve and
					replace it if needed.
					6. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
					1. Using the circuit diagram, check if a component is
					assigned to the output.
					2. Check the wiring, in particular that it is wired
					correctly.
					3. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
					defective plug connections such as corroded or
		Current output driver 6		If this error occurs, then an electrical component	damaged plug contacts
		(AIM06) unknown		has been connected at the output although the	4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523225	2	electrical component	Trm Shutdown	input should not be used.	occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
				The measured line resistance between the	measure the resistance of the connected component
				connected component and the control unit is too	using a terminal tester.
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is	3. Check the wiring between the connected
				too high.	component and the control unit, in particular with
				1. Wiring or plug connection contacts battery	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
		Current output driver 6		voltage.	or damaged plug contacts.
		(AIM06) short to		2. Component has an internal defect.	4. Check the function of the connected component and
523225	3	battery	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	replace it if needed.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
					using a terminal tester.
					3. Check the wiring between the connected
					component and the control unit, in particular with
				The measured line resistance between the	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
				connected component and the control unit is too	or damaged plug contacts.
				high.	4. Check the function of the connected component and
				1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	replace it if needed.
		Current output driver 6		2. Component has an internal defect.	5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523225	5	(AIM06) open circuit	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
					using a terminal tester.
				The measured line resistance between the	3. Check the wiring between the connected
				connected component and the control unit is too	component and the control unit, in particular with
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
				too low.	or damaged plug contacts.
				1. Wiring or plug connection contacts vehicle	4. Check the function of the connected component and
		Current output driver 6		ground.	replace it if needed.
		(AIM06) short to		2. Component has an internal defect.	5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523225	6	ground	TCU Shutdown	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
		Current output driver 6		The measured line resistance between the	1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
		(AIM06) short circuit to		proportional valve and the control unit is too	the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
523225	8	another valve	Trm Shutdown	high or the voltage on the control unit output is	2. Check if the error occurs with an additional

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
				too low.	proportional valve or with which valve the error is
				1. Wiring or plug connection contacts another	bypassed.
				proportional valve.	3. Check the wiring between the proportional valve
				2. Proportional valve has an internal defect.	and the control unit, in particular with regard to
				3. Control unit has an internal defect.	defective plug connections such as corroded or
					damaged plug contacts.
					4. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit, and
					measure the resistance of the proportional valve using
					a terminal tester.
					5. Check the function of the proportional valve and
					replace it if needed.
					6. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
					1. Using the circuit diagram, check if a
					component is assigned to the output.
					2. Check the wiring, in particular that it is
					wired correctly.
		Current output driver 7		If this error occurs, then an electrical component	3. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
		(AIM07) unknown		has been connected at the output although the	defective plug connections such as corroded or
523230	2	electrical component	Trm Shutdown	input should not be used.	damaged plug contacts
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
				The measured line resistance between the	measure the resistance of the connected component
				connected component and the control unit is too	using a terminal tester.
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is	3. Check the wiring between the connected
				too high.	component and the control unit, in particular with
				1. Wiring or plug connection contacts battery	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
		Current output driver 7		voltage.	or damaged plug contacts.
		(AIM07) short to		2. Component has an internal defect.	4. Check the function of the connected component and
523230	3	battery	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	replace it if needed.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
					using a terminal tester.
					3. Check the wiring between the connected
					component and the control unit, in particular with
				The measured line resistance between the	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
				connected component and the control unit is too	or damaged plug contacts.
				high.	4. Check the function of the connected component and
				1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	replace it if needed.
		Current output driver 7		2. Component has an internal defect.	5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523230	5	(AIM07) open circuit	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
					1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
					the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
					2. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component using a terminal tester.
				The measured line resistance between the	3. Check the wiring between the connected
				connected component and the control unit is too	component and the control unit, in particular with
				high or the voltage on the control unit output is	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
				too low.	or damaged plug contacts.
				1. Wiring or plug connection contacts vehicle	4. Check the function of the connected component and
		Current output driver 7		ground.	replace it if needed.
		(AIM07) short to		2. Component has an internal defect.	5. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523230	6	ground	TCU Shutdown	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
		Current output driver 7		The measured line resistance between the	1. Switch the ignition off, wait 10 seconds and switch
		(AIM07) short circuit to		proportional valve and the control unit is too	the ignition back on. Check if the error is still active.
523230	8	another valve	Trm Shutdown	high or the voltage on the control unit output is	2. Check if the error occurs with an additional

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
1				too low.	proportional valve or with which valve the error is
1				1. Wiring or plug connection contacts another	bypassed.
1				proportional valve.	3. Check the wiring between the proportional valve
1				2. Proportional valve has an internal defect.	and the control unit, in particular with regard to
1				3. Control unit has an internal defect.	defective plug connections such as corroded or
1					damaged plug contacts.
					4. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit, and
					measure the resistance of the proportional valve using
1					a terminal tester.
					5. Check the function of the proportional valve and
1					replace it if needed.
					6. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
ļ					occur.
				TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin,	
				that looks like a s.c. to battery voltage cable is	
1		Digital current output		defective and is contacted to battery voltage	check the cable from TCU to the device at ADM1 check
		driver 1 (ADM1) short		device has an internal defect connector pin is	the connectors check the resistance of the device at
523280	3	to battery	Trm Shutdown	contacted to battery voltage	ADM1
				TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin,	
1				that looks like a o.c. for this output pin cable is	
		Digital current output		defective and has no connection to TCU device	check the cable from TCU to the device at ADM1 check
	_	driver 1 (ADM1) open		has an internal defect connector has no	the connectors check the resistance of the device at
523280	5	circuit	Trm Shutdown	connection to TCU	ADM1
				TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin,	
1				that looks like a s.c. to vehicle ground cable is	
ł		Digital current output		defective and is contacted to vehicle ground	check the cable from TCU to the device at ADM1 check
500000		driver 1 (ADM1) short	<b>T C L</b>	device has an internal defect connector pin is	the connectors check the resistance of the device at
523280	6	to ground	Trm Shutdown	contacted to vehicle ground	ADM1
522262	10	Digital current output	The charles	TCU detected overtemperature or an internal	
523280		driver 1 (ADM1) defect	Trm Shutdown	error at the digital output	Change TCU
523281	3	Digital current output	Trm Shutdown	TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin,	check the cable from TCU to the device at ADM2 check

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
		driver 2 (ADM2) short		that looks like a s.c. to battery voltage cable is	the connectors check the resistance of the device at
		to battery		defective and is contacted to battery voltage	ADM2
				device has an internal defect connector pin is	
				contacted to battery voltage	
				TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin,	
				that looks like a o.c. for this output pin cable is	
		Digital current output		defective and has no connection to TCU device	check the cable from TCU to the device at ADM2 check
		driver 2 (ADM2) open		has an internal defect connector has no	the connectors check the resistance of the device at
523281	5	circuit	Trm Shutdown	connection to TCU	ADM2
				TCU detected a wrong voltage at the output pin,	
				that looks like a s.c. to vehicle ground cable is	
		Digital current output		defective and is contacted to vehicle ground	check the cable from TCU to the device at ADM2 check
		driver 2 (ADM2) short		device has an internal defect connector pin is	the connectors check the resistance of the device at
523281	6	to ground	Trm Shutdown	contacted to vehicle ground	ADM2
		Digital current output		TCU detected overtemperature or an internal	
523281	12	driver 2 (ADM2) defect	Trm Shutdown	error at the digital output	Change TCU
					1. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
					measure the resistance of the connected component
					using a terminal tester.
					2. Check the wiring between the connected
					component and the control unit, in particular with
				The measured line resistance between the	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
		Resistance sensor input		connected component and the control unit is too	or damaged plug contacts.
		2 (ER2) open circuit or		high.	3. Check the function of the connected component and
		short to high source:		<ol> <li>Wiring or plug connection is defective.</li> </ol>	replace it if needed.
		Torque converter		<ol><li>Component has an internal defect.</li></ol>	4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523145	3	temperature	Normal	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
		Resistance sensor input		The measured line resistance between the	1. Switch the ignition off, unplug the control unit and
		2 (ER2) short to		connected component and the control unit is too	measure the resistance of the connected component
		ground: Torque		high or the voltage on the control unit output is	using a terminal tester.
523145	6	converter temperature	Normal	too low.	2. Check the wiring between the connected

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
				1. Wiring or plug connection contacts vehicle	component and the control unit, in particular with
				ground.	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
				2. Component has an internal defect	or damaged plug contacts.
				3. Control unit has an internal defect.	3. Check the function of the connected component and
					replace it if needed.
					4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
				The measured voltage at the sensor input 1 is	
				too high:	
				cable is defective and is contacted to battery	
				voltage	
				clutch cut off / inch pedal sensor has an internal	check the cable from TCU to the sensor
		Voltage sensor input 1		defect	check the connectors
523125	3	(EU1) overvoltage	Limp Home	connector pin is contacted to battery voltage	check the sensor
				The measured voltage at the sensor input 1 is	
				too low:	
				cable is defective and is contacted to vehicle	
				ground	
				cable has no connection to TCU	
				clutch cut off / inch pedal sensor has an internal	
		Voltage sensor input 1		defect	check the cable from TCU to the sensor
		(EU1) open or short to		connector pin is contacted to vehicle ground or	check the connectors
523125	6	ground	Limp Home	is broken	check the sensor
				The measured voltage from sensor output signal	
				1 and output signal 2 don't match or are out of	
		N/-11		range.	check the cable from TCU to the sensor
500405		Voltage sensor input 1		1. Cable is defective	check the connectors
523125	12	(EU1) defect	Limp Home	2. Sensor has an internal defect	check the sensor
		Supply for temperature		The measured voltage is too high.	The cause of the incorrect voltage must be located.
500000		sensors (AU_ER)		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	1. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
523023	3	overvoltage	Limp Home	2. Sensor has an internal defect.	defective plug connections such as corroded or

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
				3, Control unit has an internal defect.	damaged plug contacts.
					2. Check the correct wiring of the pins.
					3. Check the function of the sensor or replace the
					sensor.
					4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
					occur.
					The cause of the incorrect voltage must be located.
					1. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
					defective plug connections such as corroded or
					damaged plug contacts.
					2. Check the correct wiring of the pins.
				The measured voltage is too low.	3. Check the function of the sensor or replace the
		Supply for temperature		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	sensor.
		sensors (AU_ER)		2. Sensor has an internal defect.	4. Replace the control unit if the error continues to
523023	4	undervoltage	Limp Home	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	occur.
				The measured voltage at the sensor input 2 is	
				too high:	
				cable is defective and is contacted to battery	
				voltage	
				clutch cut off / inch pedal sensor has an internal	check the cable from TCU to the sensor
		Voltage sensor input 2		defect	check the connectors
523130	3	(EU2) overvoltage	Limp Home	connector pin is contacted to battery voltage	check the sensor
				The measured voltage at the sensor input 2 is	
				too low:	
				cable is defective and is contacted to vehicle	
				ground	
				cable has no connection to TCU	
				clutch cut off / inch pedal sensor has an internal	
		Voltage sensor input 2		defect	1. Check the cable from TCU to the sensor
		(EU2) open or short to		connector pin is contacted to vehicle ground or	2. Check the connectors
523130	6	ground	Limp Home	is broken	3. Check the sensor

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
				The measured voltage from sensor output signal	
				1 and output signal 2 don't match or are out of	
				range.	1. Check the cable from TCU to the sensor
		Voltage sensor input 2		1. Cable is defective	2. Check the connectors
523130	12	(EU2) defect	Limp Home	2. Sensor has an internal defect	3. Check the sensor
523050	0	Internal TCU Error 6	TCU Shutdown		
					Read out the operating data with Testman and send
523047	12	Internal TCU Error 3	TCU Shutdown	The control unit detects an internal error.	them to your ZF contact.
					The cause of the increased temperature input in the
					transmission must be located.
					1. Check the oil level and correct it as needed.
					2. Check the function of the cooler fan.
					3. Check the transmission oil cooler for contaminants
					and damage.
					4. Check the connection lines from the transmission to
					the transmission oil cooler for damage.
				The measured temperature in the oil sump of	5. Check the transmission oil temperature using the
				the transmission is too high.	diagnosis unit. If the measured oil temperature does
		Transmission sump oil		1. The oil level is incorrect.	not drop when the vehicle is operated at idle even
		most severe		2. The cooling system is faulty.	after a longer period of time, then the temperature
523300	0	overtemperature	Normal	3. Load is permanently too high.	sensor needs to be replaced.
					The cause of the increased temperature input in the
					transmission must be located.
					1. Check the oil level and correct it as needed.
					2. Check the function of the cooler fan.
					3. Check the transmission oil cooler for contaminants
				The measured temperature in the oil sump of	and damage.
				the transmission is too high.	4. Check the connection lines from the transmission to
		Transmission sump oil		1. The oil level is incorrect.	the transmission oil cooler for damage.
		moderately severe		2. The cooling system is faulty.	5. Check the transmission oil temperature using the
523300	16	overtemperature	Normal	3. Load is permanently too high.	diagnosis unit. If the measured oil temperature does

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					not drop when the vehicle is operated at idle even
					after a longer period of time, then the temperature
					sensor needs to be replaced.
					If this error occurs while driving, then remain at a
					standstill, switch the ignition off, then on again and
					wait another 40 seconds.
					1. Replace the filter.
					2. Check the wiring of the switch, in particular with
				1. Filter clogged.	regard to defective plug connections such as corroded
523305	0	Oil Filter contaminated	Normal	2. Sensor has an internal defect.	or damaged plug contacts.
				The control unit receives a transmission input	
				torque via the CAN bus that exceeds the	
				permissible maximum.	1. Reduce the applied engine torque.
		Transmission input		1. Engine torque too high.	2. If this error continues to occur, please contact your
523310	0	torque too high	Normal	2. CAN bus signal is faulty.	vehicle manufacturer.
		Transmission input		TCU calculates an transmission input power	engine controller may ignore Torque or speedlimit
523311	0	power too high	Normal	above the defined thresholds	command from TCU via TSC1 message
		Transmission output		The speed at the transmission output exceeds	The speed at the transmission output exceeds the
523320	15	speed too high	Normal	the permissible maximum.	permissible maximum.
					Reduce the engine speed.
		Transmission input		The speed at the transmission input exceeds the	In order to prevent long-term damage, stay within the
523330	15	speed too high	Trm Shutdown	permissible maximum.	permissible speed range.
				The control unit calculates a torque at the	
				transmission output that exceeds the	
		Transmission output		permissible maximum.	
523340	0	torque too high	Trm Shutdown	1. Engine torque too high.	Reduce the applied engine torque.
		Clutch adjustment data			
523360	9	invalid	Normal	The clutch calibration was not performed.	Perform the clutch calibration.
		Clutch calibration			
523361	13	process failed	TCU Shutdown	The clutch calibration did fail	Check oil level and run calibration again.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					If the control unit resets the error itself, then this is a
					matter of a sporadically occurring error.
					Check the following points only when the error is
					active.
					1. Check the CAN connection for interruptions, in
					particular with regard to defective plug connections
					such as corroded or damaged plug contacts.
					2. Replace the ZF control unit.
					3. Check the terminating resistor of the CAN
					connection (CAN 1). Using an ohmmeter, also
					determine the resistance on the control unit and on
					the adapter when the ignition is off. The resistance
				An electrical error exists on the vehicle CAN bus.	value must be 120 Ohm ± 10 Ohm for each.
				1. Malfunction on the CAN bus.	4. If this error continues to occur, please contact the
523400	9	Vehicle CAN failure	Trm Shutdown	2. ZF control unit has an internal defect.	vehicle manufacturer.
					The cause of the missing connection must be located.
					1. If error vehicle can failure occurs, then repair this
				The control unit no longer transfers any	first.
				information.	2. If this error continues to be active, please contact
523402	9	ECU connection loss	Limp Home	1. Engine control unit has an internal defect.	your vehicle manufacturer.
					Check CAN Connection, check source Adress of the
523403	9	VCU connection loss	Trm Shutdown	No communication to the Vehicle Controller	VCU
					The cause of the missing connection must be located.
					1. If error vehicle can failure occurs, then repair this
				The extension no longer transfers any	first.
		I/O-Extension		information.	2. If this error continues to be active, please contact
523405	9	connection loss	Trm Shutdown	1. I/O extension has an internal defect.	your appropriate ZF service partner.
				The control unit does not receive the CAN	If the control unit resets the error itself, then this is a
				message or the message contains faulty data.	matter of a sporadically occurring error or an excessive
		Message ZFTC1 invalid		1. Sporadic electrical error.	bus load.
523411	9	or timeout	Trm Shutdown	2. CAN bus overloaded.	1. If error VCU Connection loss occurs, then repair this

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
				3. Sending control unit has an internal defect.	first.
				4. Receiving control unit has an internal defect.	2. If this error continues to be active, please contact
					your vehicle manufacturer.
					If the control unit resets the error itself, then this is a
				The control unit does not receive the CAN	matter of a sporadically occurring error or an excessive
				message or the message contains faulty data.	bus load.
				1. Sporadic electrical error.	1. If error ECU Connection lost occurs, then repair this
				2. CAN bus overloaded.	first.
		Message EEC1 invalid		3. Sending control unit has an internal defect.	2. If this error continues to be active, please contact
523413	9	or timeout	Limp Home	4. Receiving control unit has an internal defect.	your vehicle manufacturer.
					If the control unit resets the error itself, then this is a
				The control unit does not receive the CAN	matter of a sporadically occurring error or an excessive
				message or the message contains faulty data.	bus load.
				1. Sporadic electrical error.	1. If error ECU Connection lost occurs, then repair this
				2. CAN bus overloaded.	first.
		Message EEC2 invalid		3. Sending control unit has an internal defect.	2. If this error continues to be active, please contact
523414	9	or timeout	Limp Home	4. Receiving control unit has an internal defect.	your vehicle manufacturer.
					If the control unit resets the error itself, then this is a
				The control unit does not receive the CAN	matter of a sporadically occurring error or an excessive
ļ				message or the message contains faulty data.	bus load.
				1. Sporadic electrical error.	1. If error ECU Connection lost occurs, then repair this
				2. CAN bus overloaded.	first.
		Message EEC3 invalid		3. Sending control unit has an internal defect.	2. If this error continues to be active, please contact
523415	9	or timeout	Limp Home	4. Receiving control unit has an internal defect.	your vehicle manufacturer.
					If the control unit resets the error itself, then this is a
				The control unit does not receive the CAN	matter of a sporadically occurring error or an excessive
				message or the message contains faulty data.	bus load.
				1. Sporadic electrical error.	1. If error ECU Connection lost occurs, then repair this
				2. CAN bus overloaded.	first.
		Message EC1 invalid or		3. Sending control unit has an internal defect.	2. If this error continues to be active, please contact
523416	9	timeout	Limp Home	4. Receiving control unit has an internal defect.	your vehicle manufacturer.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					If the control unit resets the error itself, then this is a
				The control unit does not receive the CAN	matter of a sporadically occurring error or an excessive
ľ				message or the message contains faulty data.	bus load.
ľ				1. Sporadic electrical error.	1. If error VCU connection lost occurs, then repair this
ľ				2. CAN bus overloaded.	first.
ľ		Message B invalid or		3. Sending control unit has an internal defect.	2. If this error continues to be active, please contact
523417	9	timeout	Normal	4. Receiving control unit has an internal defect.	your vehicle manufacturer.
				The control unit does not receive the CAN	
ľ				message or the message contains faulty data.	
ľ				1. Sporadic electrical error.	1. If error VCU connection lost occurs, then repair this
ľ				2. CAN bus overloaded.	first.
ľ		Message EBC1 invalid		3. Sending control unit has an internal defect.	2. If this error continues to be active, please contact
523418	9	or timeout	Normal	4. Receiving control unit has an internal defect.	your vehicle manufacturer.
ľ				One or more signals of the messages from	1. Check the software version of the transmission
ľ		Signal actual engine		engine controller contains faulty data.	control unit and program the current software version
ľ		torque or signal engine		1. Incorrect software on the transmission control	if required.
ľ		speed (EEC1) are		unit.	2. If this error continues to occurs, please contact your
523419	9	defective	Limp Home	2. Incorrect software on the engine controller.	vehicle manufacturer.
ľ					If the control unit resets the error itself, then this is a
ľ				The control unit does not receive the CAN	matter of a sporadically occurring error or an excessive
ľ				message or the message contains faulty data.	bus load.
ľ				1. Sporadic electrical error.	1. If error Vehicle CAN error occurs, then repair this
ľ				2. CAN bus overloaded.	first.
ľ		Message CCVS invalid		3. Sending control unit has an internal defect.	2. If this error continues to be active, please contact
523420	9	or timeout	Normal	4. Receiving control unit has an internal defect.	your vehicle manufacturer.
				The control unit does not receive the CAN	If the control unit resets the error itself, then this is a
ľ				message or the message contains faulty data.	matter of a sporadically occurring error or an excessive
				1. Sporadic electrical error.	bus load.
				2. CAN bus overloaded.	1. If error Vehicle CAN error occurs, then repair this
		Message JBERC1 invalid		3. Sending control unit has an internal defect.	first.
523426	9	or timeout	Limp Home	4. Receiving control unit has an internal defect.	2. If this error continues to be active, please contact

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					HCE.
					If the control unit resets the error itself, then this is a
				The control unit does not receive the CAN	matter of a sporadically occurring error or an excessive
				message or the message contains faulty data.	bus load.
				1. Sporadic electrical error.	1. If error Vehicle CAN error occurs, then repair this
				2. CAN bus overloaded.	first.
		Message JBRC invalid		3. Sending control unit has an internal defect.	2. If this error continues to be active, please contact
523427	9	or timeout	Limp Home	4. Receiving control unit has an internal defect.	HCE.
				The operating mode assigned by the vehicle	1. Check the software version of the transmission
				control unit is invalid for the transmission.	control unit and program the current software version
				1. Incorrect software on the transmission control	if required.
		Operation Mode		unit.	2. If this error continues to occurs, please contact HCE.
523470	19	command invalid	Trm Shutdown	2. Incorrect software on the vehicle computer.	
				The transmission mode assigned by the vehicle	1. Check the software version of the transmission
				control unit is invalid for the transmission.	control unit and program the current software version
				1. Incorrect software on the transmission control	if required.
		Transmission command		unit.	2. If this error continues to occurs, please contact HCE.
523471	19	invalid	Trm Shutdown	2. Incorrect software on the vehicle computer.	
		Machine configuration			Check version of vehicle controller (it has to support
523480	9	invalid	TCU Shutdown	The startup handshake has not been successful.	handshaking).
		Testmode requested			Take back the test mode request, set the conditions to
		but conditions not			the allowed thresholds and request the Test Mode
523481	0	complied	Trm Shutdown	The conditions for Testmode are not fulfilled	again
					1. Reduce the engine speed.
				<b>3</b>	2. If this error continues to occur, please contact your
				CAN bus that exceeds the permissible maximum.	vehicle manufacturer.
				1. Engine speed too high.	Note: In order to prevent permanent damage, stay
523500	0	Overspeed engine	Normal	2. CAN bus signal is faulty.	within the permissible speed range.
		Engine speed limit		The transmission control unit requires a limited	
		request does not take		engine speed; the engine does not maintain the	If this error continues to be active, please contact
523501	0	effect	Normal	limit;	HCE.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
		Engine speed control		The transmission control unit requires a certain	
ľ		request does not take		engine speed; the engine controller does not set	If this error continues to be active, please contact
523502	C	effect	Normal	this speed;	HCE.
		Engine torque limit		The transmission control unit requires a limited	
ľ		request does not take		engine torque; the engine does not maintain the	If this error continues to be active, please contact
523503	C	effect	Normal	limit;	HCE.
		Engine torque control		The transmission control unit requires a certain	
ľ		request does not take		engine torque; the engine controller does not set	If this error continues to be active, please contact
523504	C	effect	Normal	this torque;	HCE.
ľ		Protection related			Read out the operating data with Testman and send
523600	C	error detected	Trm Shutdown	The control unit detects a safety-relevant error.	them to your ZF contact.
		Protection Function 1			
ľ		(SF01) Unwanted			Read out the operating data with Testman and send
523600	1	driveaway	TCU Shutdown	Unexpected vehicle movement detected	them to your ZF contact.
ľ		Protection Function 2			
ľ		(SF02) Unwanted			Read out the operating data with Testman and send
523600	2	driving direction	Trm Shutdown	Driving in the wrong direction detected	them to your ZF contact.
ľ		Protection Function 3			
ľ		(SF03) Safely limited			
ľ		acceleration (blocked			Read out the operating data with Testman and send
523600	3	Transmission)	Trm Shutdown	Transmission blocking detected	them to your ZF contact.
ľ		Protection Function 4			
ľ		(SF04) Safely limited			
ľ		acceleration			Read out the operating data with Testman and send
523600	4	(Downshift)	Trm Shutdown	Unalowed speeds at transmission input detected	them to your ZF contact.
		Protection Function 5			
		(SF05) Safe Output at			Read out the operating data with Testman and send
523600	5	reverse driving	Trm Shutdown	Wrong Reverse signal broadcasted	them to your ZF contact.
		Protection Function 6			Read out the operating data with Testman and send
523600	6	(SF06) Safely limited	Trm Shutdown	Unalowed speed or gear in Reverse detected	them to your ZF contact.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
		speed in Reverse			
		Protection Function 7			
		(SF07) Unwanted			Read out the operating data with Testman and send
523600	7	direction change	Trm Shutdown	Unwanted change of driving direction detected	them to your ZF contact.
		Protection Function 8			Read out the operating data with Testman and send
523600	8	(SF08)	Trm Shutdown	Safely limited torque	them to your ZF contact.
		Protection Function 9			
		(SF09) Safely limited			Read out the operating data with Testman and send
523600	9	torque	Trm Shutdown	Unalowed engine control request detected	them to your ZF contact.
		Protection Function 10			
		(SF10) Delayed gear			Read out the operating data with Testman and send
523600	10	engagement	Trm Shutdown	Unalowed delayed get into gear detected	them to your ZF contact.
		Protection Function 11		Unalowed Difflock acutation at too high speeds	Read out the operating data with Testman and send
523600	11	(SF11) Safe Difflock	Trm Shutdown	detected	them to your ZF contact.
		Protection Function 12			
		(SF12) Safe			
		Transmission Output			Read out the operating data with Testman and send
523600	12	Signals	TCU Shutdown	Safe Transmission Output	them to your ZF contact.
		Protection Function 16			Read out the operating data with Testman and send
523600	16	(SF16) Safe Inching Exit	TCU Shutdown	Safe Inchen Exit	them to your ZF contact.
		Protection Function 18			Read out the operating data with Testman and send
523600	18	(SF18) Safe Speedlimit	Trm Shutdown	Unallowed speed limit overrun	them to your ZF contact.
				The control unit detects a clutch shift although	1. Check the proportional valves.
				no gear change is requested.	2. If this error continues to occur, contact your ZF
		Protection related		1. Energization proportional valve faulty.	representative and give us the error code and the
		error in transmission		2. Proportional valve faulty.	conditions under which the error occurs. Read out the
523601	0	detected	TCU Shutdown	3. Control unit has an internal defect.	operating data with Testman and send them to us.
		Protection related		The control unit detects a faulty check sum, a	1. Check if the TC1 CAN bus message is present. In
		error in vehicle		faulty message counter, or a faulty requirement	addition, create a CAN bus measurement on the
523602	0	communication	TCU Shutdown	from the vehicle control unit.	vehicle CAN.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
		detected		1. CAN bus message is faulty.	2. If this error continues to occur, please contact HCE.
				The control unit requires that the internal supply	
		Protection error		voltage is switched off but this does not happen.	
523603	0	reaction failed	TCU Shutdown	1. Control unit has an internal defect.	1. Replace the control unit.
1					If the control unit resets the error itself, then this is a
				The control unit does not receive the CAN	matter of a sporadically occurring error or an excessive
				message or the message contains faulty data.	bus load.
				1. Sporadic electrical error.	1. If error Vehicle CAN error occurs, then repair this
		No response to request		2. CAN bus overloaded.	first.
		of Time and Date		3. Sending control unit has an internal defect.	2. If this error continues to be active, please contact
523421	9	message	Normal	4. Receiving control unit has an internal defect.	your dealer.
					If the control unit resets the error itself, then this is a
1				The control unit does not receive the CAN	matter of a sporadically occurring error or an excessive
1				message or the message contains faulty data.	bus load.
1				1. Sporadic electrical error.	1. If error Vehicle CAN error occurs, then repair this
1				2. CAN bus overloaded.	first.
1		Message VehcCFG		3. Sending control unit has an internal defect.	2. If this error continues to be active, please contact
523423	9	invalid or timeout	Trm Shutdown	4. Receiving control unit has an internal defect.	your dealer.
					If the control unit resets the error itself, then this is a
				The control unit does not receive the CAN	matter of a sporadically occurring error or an excessive
1				message or the message contains faulty data.	bus load.
1				1. Sporadic electrical error.	1. If error Vehicle CAN error occurs, then repair this
		Message CCSS or		2. CAN bus overloaded.	first.
		ZFCCSS invalid or		3. Sending control unit has an internal defect.	2. If this error continues to be active, please contact
523424	9	timeout	Trm Shutdown	4. Receiving control unit has an internal defect.	your dealer.
		Application program		The control unit does not receive the ZFVI or VI	Read out the operating data with Testman and send
523482	9	verification failed	TCU Shutdown	message or the message contains faulty data.	them to your ZF contact.
		EF1 speed does not		The control unit measures a speed at the input	The cause of the different speeds must be located.
1		match with other		which does not agree with the other speeds.	1. Check the wiring from the speed sensor to the
523100	7	speeds	Trm Shutdown	1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	control unit, in particular with regard to defective plug

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
				2. Wiring or plug connection has a poor contact.	connections such as corroded or damaged plug
				3. Distance speed sensor – sensor ring too large.	contacts.
				4. Speed sensor has an internal defect.	2. Check the function of the sensor and, if necessary,
					replace it.
				The control unit recognizes a rotational direction	The cause of the different rotational directions must be
				at the input, which does not agree with the	located.
				other rotational directions.	1. Check the wiring from the sensor to the control unit,
		EF1 direction of		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	in particular with regard to defective plug connections
		rotation does not		2. Wiring or plug connection has a poor contact.	such as corroded or damaged plug contacts.
		match with other		3. Distance speed sensor – sensor ring too large.	2. Check the function of the sensor and, if necessary,
523100	11	directions of rotation	Limp Home	4. Speed sensor has an internal defect.	replace it.
					The cause of the different speeds must be located.
				The control unit measures a speed at the input	1. Check the wiring from the speed sensor to the
				which does not agree with the other speeds.	control unit, in particular with regard to defective plug
				1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	connections such as corroded or damaged plug
		EF2 speed does not		2. Wiring or plug connection has a poor contact.	contacts.
		match with other		3. Distance speed sensor – sensor ring too large.	2. Check the function of the sensor and, if necessary,
523105	7	speeds	Trm Shutdown	4. Speed sensor has an internal defect.	replace it.
				The control unit recognizes a rotational direction	The cause of the different rotational directions must be
				at the input, which does not agree with the	located.
				other rotational directions.	1. Check the wiring from the sensor to the control unit,
		EF2 direction of		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	in particular with regard to defective plug connections
		rotation does not		2. Wiring or plug connection has a poor contact.	such as corroded or damaged plug contacts.
		match with other		3. Distance speed sensor – sensor ring too large.	2. Check the function of the sensor and, if necessary,
523105	11	directions of rotation	Limp Home	4. Speed sensor has an internal defect.	replace it.
				The control unit measures a speed at the input	The cause of the different speeds must be located.
				which does not agree with the other speeds.	1. Check the wiring from the speed sensor to the
				1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	control unit, in particular with regard to defective plug
		EF3 speed does not		2. Wiring or plug connection has a poor contact.	connections such as corroded or damaged plug
		match with other		3. Distance speed sensor – sensor ring too large.	contacts.
523110	7	speeds	Trm Shutdown	4. Speed sensor has an internal defect.	2. Check the function of the sensor and, if necessary,

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					replace it.
				The control unit recognizes a rotational direction	The cause of the different rotational directions must be
				at the input, which does not agree with the	located.
				other rotational directions.	1. Check the wiring from the sensor to the control unit,
		EF3 direction of		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	in particular with regard to defective plug connections
		rotation does not		2. Wiring or plug connection has a poor contact.	such as corroded or damaged plug contacts.
		match with other		3. Distance speed sensor – sensor ring too large.	2. Check the function of the sensor and, if necessary,
523110	11	directions of rotation	Trm Shutdown	4. Speed sensor has an internal defect.	replace it.
					The cause of the different speeds must be located.
				The control unit measures a speed at the input	1. Check the wiring from the speed sensor to the
				which does not agree with the other speeds.	control unit, in particular with regard to defective plug
				1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	connections such as corroded or damaged plug
		EF4 speed does not		2. Wiring or plug connection has a poor contact.	contacts.
		match with other		3. Distance speed sensor – sensor ring too large.	2. Check the function of the sensor and, if necessary,
523115	7	speeds	Limp Home	4. Speed sensor has an internal defect.	replace it.
				The control unit recognizes a rotational direction	The cause of the different rotational directions must be
				at the input, which does not agree with the	located.
				other rotational directions.	1. Check the wiring from the sensor to the control unit,
		EF4 direction of		1. Wiring or plug connection is defective.	in particular with regard to defective plug connections
		rotation does not		2. Wiring or plug connection has a poor contact.	such as corroded or damaged plug contacts.
		match with other		3. Distance speed sensor – sensor ring too large.	2. Check the function of the sensor and, if necessary,
523115	11	directions of rotation	Normal	4. Speed sensor has an internal defect.	replace it.
					The cause of the increased temperature at the
					converter must be located.
					1. Check the oil level and correct it as needed.
					2. Check the function of the cooler fan.
				The measured oil temperature at the converter	3. Check the transmission oil cooler for contaminants
				is too high.	and damage.
				1. The oil level is incorrect.	4. Check the connection lines from the transmission to
		Torque converter oil		2. The cooling system is faulty.	the transmission oil cooler for damage.
523302	0	temperature critical	Normal	3. Load is permanently too high.	5. Check the transmission oil temperature using the

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					diagnosis unit. If the measured oil temperature does
					not drop when the vehicle is operated at idle even
					after a longer period of time, then the temperature
					sensor needs to be replaced.
					The cause of the increased temperature at the
					converter must be located.
					1. Check the oil level and correct it as needed.
					2. Check the function of the cooler fan.
					3. Check the transmission oil cooler for contaminants
					and damage.
					4. Check the connection lines from the transmission to
					the transmission oil cooler for damage.
				The measured oil temperature at the converter	5. Check the transmission oil temperature using the
				is too high.	diagnosis unit. If the measured oil temperature does
				1. The oil level is incorrect.	not drop when the vehicle is operated at idle even
		Torque converter oil		2. The cooling system is faulty.	after a longer period of time, then the temperature
523302	16	overtemperature	Normal	3. Load is permanently too high.	sensor needs to be replaced.
				Signal 'Engine Reference Torque from engine	1. Check the software version of the transmission
				controller contains faulty data.	control unit and program the current software version
				1 .Incorrect software on the transmission control	if required.
		Engine reference		unit.	2.If this error continues to occurs, please contact HCE.
523450	19	torque signal invalid	Limp Home	2. Incorrect software on the engine controller.	
				Signal 'Actual Engine Torque' from engine	1. Check the software version of the transmission
				controller contains faulty data.	control unit and program the current software version
				1 .Incorrect software on the transmission control	if required.
		Actual engine torque		unit.	
523451	19	signal invalid	Limp Home	2. Incorrect software on the engine controller.	2.If this error continues to occurs, please contact HCE.
				Signal 'Engine Nominal Friction Torque' from	1. Check the software version of the transmission
				engine controller contains faulty data.	control unit and program the current software version
		Engine nominal friction		1 .Incorrect software on the transmission control	if required.
523452	19	torque signal invalid	Normal	unit.	2.If this error continues to occurs, please contact your

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
				2. Incorrect software on the engine controller.	HCE.
				Signal 'Requested Launch Gear' from vehicle	1. Check the software version of the transmission
				controller contains faulty data.	control unit and program the current software version
				1 .Incorrect software on the transmission control	if required.
		Launch gear request		unit.	2.If this error continues to occurs, please contact HCE.
523454	19	invalid	Normal	2. Incorrect software on the vehicle controller.	
		Message ZFSL1 invalid		Shift Lever message is missing or provides wrong	
523455	19	or timed out	Trm Shutdown	signals	Check CAN Bus, Check Shift Lever
		Invalid FNR extension			
523456	19	switches signal	Trm Shutdown	Invalid output signals from FNR switch	Check Shift Lever, FNR switch
		Neutral selected while			
		vehicle moves with		Shift Lever message is missing or provides wrong	
523650	0	overspeed	Normal	signals	Check CAN Bus, Check Shift Lever
					The cause of the occurring speed difference must be
				The TCU calculates a speed difference although	located.
				the clutch is closed. If this value is too high, it is	1. Check the existing system pressure.
				interpreted as slip on the clutch.	2. Check the filter and replace it if needed (compare
				1. Insufficient pressure on the clutch.	error 195).
				2. Insufficient system pressure.	3. Check the function of the clutch.
				3. Filter clogged.	4. Check the function of the proportional valves and
				4. Clutch faulty.	replace them if needed.
				5. Transmission input speed signal faulty.	5. Check if all speeds are present and correct.
				6. Transmission output speed signal faulty.	6. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
		Clutch K1 slipping		7. Distance speed sensor – sensor ring too large.	defective plug connections such as corroded or
523700	0	unintendedly	Limp Home	8. Significant oscillation of the engine speed.	damaged plug contacts.
				The TCU calculates a speed difference although	The cause of the occurring speed difference must be
				the clutch is closed. If this value is too high, it is	located.
				interpreted as slip on the clutch.	1. Check the existing system pressure.
				1. Insufficient pressure on the clutch.	2. Check the filter and replace it if needed (compare
		Clutch K2 slipping		2. Insufficient system pressure.	error 195).
523705	0	unintendedly	Limp Home	3. Filter clogged.	3. Check the function of the clutch.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
1				4. Clutch faulty.	4. Check the function of the proportional valves and
				5. Transmission input speed signal faulty.	replace them if needed.
				6. Transmission output speed signal faulty.	5. Check if all speeds are present and correct.
1				7. Distance speed sensor – sensor ring too large.	6. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
1				8. Significant oscillation of the engine speed.	defective plug connections such as corroded or
					damaged plug contacts.
					The cause of the occurring speed difference must be
				The TCU calculates a speed difference although	located.
1				the clutch is closed. If this value is too high, it is	1. Check the existing system pressure.
1				interpreted as slip on the clutch.	2. Check the filter and replace it if needed (compare
1				1. Insufficient pressure on the clutch.	error 195).
				2. Insufficient system pressure.	3. Check the function of the clutch.
				3. Filter clogged.	4. Check the function of the proportional valves and
1				4. Clutch faulty.	replace them if needed.
				5. Transmission input speed signal faulty.	5. Check if all speeds are present and correct.
1				6. Transmission output speed signal faulty.	6. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
		Clutch K3 slipping		7. Distance speed sensor – sensor ring too large.	defective plug connections such as corroded or
523710	0	unintendedly	Limp Home	8. Significant oscillation of the engine speed.	damaged plug contacts.
					The cause of the occurring speed difference must be
				The TCU calculates a speed difference although	located.
1				the clutch is closed. If this value is too high, it is	1. Check the existing system pressure.
				interpreted as slip on the clutch.	2. Check the filter and replace it if needed (compare
				1. Insufficient pressure on the clutch.	error 195).
1				2. Insufficient system pressure.	3. Check the function of the clutch.
				3. Filter clogged.	4. Check the function of the proportional valves and
				4. Clutch faulty.	replace them if needed.
				5. Transmission input speed signal faulty.	5. Check if all speeds are present and correct.
				6. Transmission output speed signal faulty.	6. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
		Clutch KV slipping		7. Distance speed sensor – sensor ring too large.	defective plug connections such as corroded or
523715	0	unintendedly	Limp Home	8. Significant oscillation of the engine speed.	damaged plug contacts.
523720	0	Clutch K4 slipping	Limp Home	The TCU calculates a speed difference although	The cause of the occurring speed difference must be

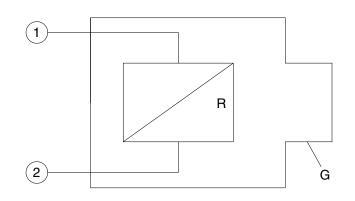
SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
		unintendedly		the clutch is closed. If this value is too high, it is	located.
				interpreted as slip on the clutch.	1. Check the existing system pressure.
				1. Insufficient pressure on the clutch.	2. Check the filter and replace it if needed (compare
				2. Insufficient system pressure.	error 195).
				3. Filter clogged.	3. Check the function of the clutch.
				4. Clutch faulty.	4. Check the function of the proportional valves and
				5. Transmission input speed signal faulty.	replace them if needed.
				6. Transmission output speed signal faulty.	5. Check if all speeds are present and correct.
				7. Distance speed sensor – sensor ring too large.	6. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
				8. Significant oscillation of the engine speed.	defective plug connections such as corroded or
					damaged plug contacts.
					The cause of the occurring speed difference must be
				The TCU calculates a speed difference although	located.
				the clutch is closed. If this value is too high, it is	1. Check the existing system pressure.
				interpreted as slip on the clutch.	2. Check the filter and replace it if needed (compare
				1. Insufficient pressure on the clutch.	error 195).
				2. Insufficient system pressure.	3. Check the function of the clutch.
				3. Filter clogged.	4. Check the function of the proportional valves and
				4. Clutch faulty.	replace them if needed.
				5. Transmission input speed signal faulty.	5. Check if all speeds are present and correct.
				6. Transmission output speed signal faulty.	6. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
		Clutch KR slipping		7. Distance speed sensor – sensor ring too large.	defective plug connections such as corroded or
523725	0	unintendedly	Limp Home	8. Significant oscillation of the engine speed.	damaged plug contacts.
				The TCU calculates a speed difference although	The cause of the occurring speed difference must be
				the clutch is closed. If this value is too high, it is	located.
				interpreted as slip on the clutch.	1. Check the existing system pressure.
				1. Insufficient pressure on the clutch.	2. Check the filter and replace it if needed (compare
				2. Insufficient system pressure.	error 195).
				3. Filter clogged.	3. Check the function of the clutch.
		LUC slipping		4. Clutch faulty.	4. Check the function of the proportional valves and
523730	0	unintendedly	Normal	5. Transmission input speed signal faulty.	replace them if needed.

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
				6. Transmission output speed signal faulty.	5. Check if all speeds are present and correct.
				7. Distance speed sensor – sensor ring too large.	6. Check the wiring, in particular with regard to
				8. Significant oscillation of the engine speed.	defective plug connections such as corroded or
					damaged plug contacts.
				Normally an upshift would have been necessary	
				to protect the motor due to the increased motor	
		Upshift by engine		speed. Since no shift can be performed in mode	
		overspeed not		Limp Home, transmission shifts to neutral	Do not overspeed engine in Limp Home. Use service
523385	0	supported in limphome	Trm Shutdown	instead.	brakes.
					1. Wait for 20s to cool down clutches
		Clutch KV temperature			2. Train operator to avoid unnecessary direction
523355	0	critical	Trm Shutdown	Failure related to overheated clutch KV	changes
					1. Wait for 20s to cool down clutches
		Clutch KR temperature			2. Train operator to avoid unnecessary direction
523356	0	critical	Trm Shutdown	Failure related to overheated clutch KR	changes
				The measured voltage of CCO and CCO2 signals	
				don't match or are out of range. Or received	
				signals via CAN do not correlate.	1. Check the cable from TCU to the sensor
		CCO or inch pedal		1. Cable is defective	2. Check connectors
523171	12	signals missmatch	Normal	2. Sensor has an internal defect	3. Check sensor
				TCU was not able to read correct inchpedal	
				adjustment parameters	
				1. Interference during saving data on non	
				volatile memory	
		Inchpedal calibration		2. TCU is brand new, the inchpedal calibration	
523171	13	failed	Normal	was not performed	Perform the inchpedal calibration process.
525171					1. Check transmission harness, cables between TCU
		More than one internal		More than one internal speed sensor is not	and speed sensors
		speed sensors are		working properly. In this case limp home mode is	2. Check connectors
523118	11	defective	Trm Shutdown	not possible anymore.	3. Check sensor
723110	<u> </u>		init shatao wit		

SPN	FMI	FaultDescription	OpMode	Cause	PossibleSteptoRepair
					1. Check CAN bus
					2. Check the software version of the transmission
					control unit and program the current software version
					if required.
		Message ZFTC2 invalid		ZFTC2 message is missing or provides wrong	3. If this error continues to occurs, please contact your
523431	19	or timed out	Trm Shutdown	signals.	vehicle manufacturer.
					1. Check CAN bus
					2. Check shift lever
					3. Check the software version of the transmission
					control unit and program the current software version
					if required.
		Message ZFSL1_FNR		Shift Lever message is missing or provides wrong	4. If this error continues to occurs, please contact your
523432	19	invalid or timed out	Trm Shutdown	signals.	vehicle manufacturer.
		CCO or inch pedal		A problem with the signals required for CCO or	1. Check cable from TCU or the sensor
		signal fault during CCO		inching occured while the vehicle was in CCO or	2. Check connectors
523171	11	or inching	Limp Home	inching operation.	3. Check sensor

#### 5) MEASURING OF RESISTANCE AT ACTUATOR/SENSOR AND CABLE

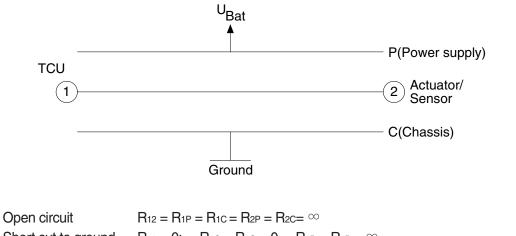
(1) Actuator



76043PT19

76043PT20

(2) Cable



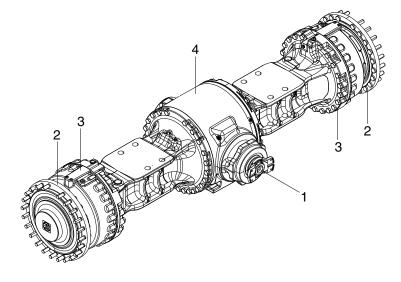
Short cut to ground $R_{12} = 0$ ; $R_{1C} = R_{2C} = 0$ , $R_{1P} = R_{2P} = \infty$ Short cut to battery $R_{12} = 0$ ; $R_{1C} = R_{2C} = 0$ , $R_{1P} = R_{2P} = 0$ 

# 5. AXLE

## 1) OPERATION

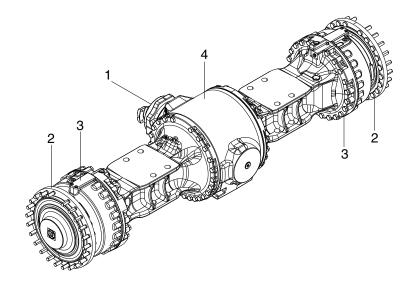
- The power from the engine passes through torque converter, transmission and drive shafts, and is then sent to the front and rear axles.
- Inside the axles, the power passes from the bevel pinion to the bevel gear and is sent at right angles. At the same time, the speed is reduced and passes through the both differentials to the axle shafts. The power of the axle shafts is further reduced by planetary-gear-type final drives and is sent to the wheels.

### (1) Front axle



1	Input	2	Output	3	Brake
4	Axle housing				

(2) Rear axle



78093PT15

Brake

3

78093PT14

1 Input

2 Output

4 Axle housing

#### 2) DIFFERENTIAL

#### (1) Description

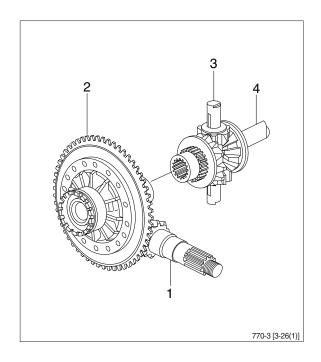
When the machine makes a turn, the outside wheel must rotate faster than the inside wheel. A differential is a device which continuously transmits power to the right and left wheels while allowing them to turn a different speeds, during a turn.

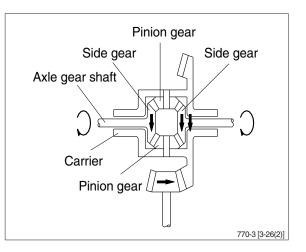
The power from the drive shaft passes through bevel pinion (1) and is transmitted to the bevel gear (2). The bevel gear changes the direction of the motive force by 90 degree, and at the same time reduces the speed.

It then transmits the motive force through the differential (3) to the axle gear shaft (4).

#### (2) When driving straight forward

When the machine is being driven straight forward and the right and left wheels are rotating at the same speed, so the pinion gear inside the differential assembly do not rotate. The motive force of the carrier is send through the pinion gear and the side gear, therefore the power is equally transmitted to the left and right axle gear shaft.

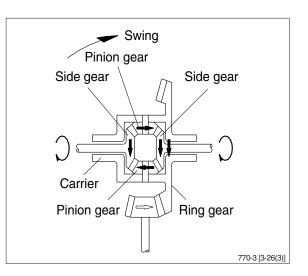




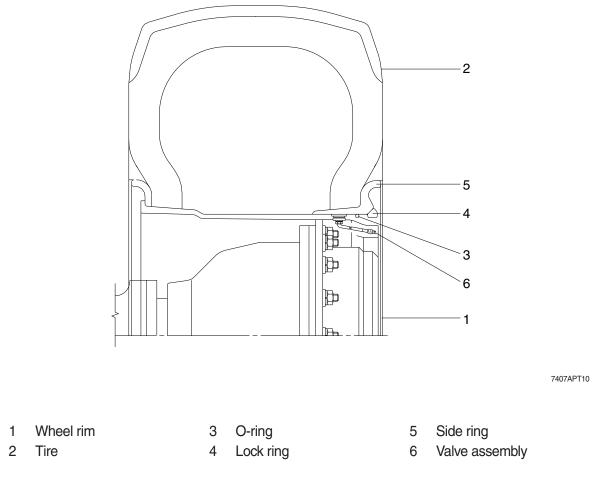
#### (3) When turning

When turning, the rotating speed of the left and right wheels is different, so the pinion gear and side gear inside the differential assembly rotate in accordance with the difference between the rotating speed of the left and right wheels.

The power of the carrier is then transmitted to the axle gear shafts.



## 6. TIRE AND WHEEL



- 1) The tire acts to absorb the shock from the ground surface to the machine, and at the same time they must rotate in contact with the ground to gain the power which drives the machine.
- 2) Various types of tires are available to suit the purpose. Therefore it is very important to select the correct tires for the type of work and bucket capacity.

# GROUP 2 OPERATIONAL CHECKS AND TROUBLESHOOTING

## 1. POWER TRAIN OPERATIONAL CHECKS

This procedure is designed so that the mechanic can make a quick check of the system using a minimum amount of diagnostic equipment. If you need additional information, read Structure and function, Group 1.

A location will be required which is level and has adequate space to complete the checks.

The engine and all other major components must be at operating temperature for some checks.

Locate system check in the left column and read completely, following the sequence from left to right. Read each check completely before performing.

At the end of each check, if no problem is found(OK), that check is complete or an additional check is needed. If problem is indicated(NOT OK), you will be given repair required and group location. If verification is needed, you will be given next best source of information :

Chapter 2 : Troubleshooting Group 3 : Tests and adjustments

* Transmis	sion oil must be at	operating tempera	ture for these checks.
------------	---------------------	-------------------	------------------------

Automatic shifting check       Start engine.       OK         Automatic shifting check       Move gear selector lever to 4th speed.       NOT OK         Automatic shifting check       Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto       Hours of transmission fa	ltem		Description	Service action
Move gear selector lever to 3rd speed.         MANUAL mode         Image: Selector lever to forward TP position.         Increase engine speed to high idle for 30 seconds.         Image: Selector lever to neutral TV* position and run for 15 seconds.         Repeat procedure until transmission temperature gauge arrow points to bar above dial.         Image: Selector lever and neutral lock latch checks         Engine OFF.         Image: Selector lever and neutral lock latch checks         Image: Selector lever position.         Image: Selector lever read procedure until transmission fampe: Selector lever position.         Image: Selector lever read procedure until transmission fampe: Selector lever read through all positions.         Engage neutral lock.         Apply slight effort to move lever into forward (F) and reverse (R).         LOOK : Neutral lock must stay engaged.         Automatic shifting check         Automatic shifting check         Automatic sign on cluster:         Automatic mode         Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto light)	•	• • • • •		
MANUAL mode       Move gear selector lever to forward "F" position. Increase engine speed to high idle for 30 seconds.       Move gear selector lever to neutral "N" position and run for 15 seconds.         Gear selector lever and neutral lock latch checks       Move gear selector lever to each position.       OK Check completed.         Gear selector lever and neutral lock latch checks       Move gear selector lever to each position.       OK Check completed.         More gear selector lever position column is tilted.       Move gear selector lever position column is tilted.       OK Check completed.         More gear selector lever must move gear selector lever position.       NOT OK Repair lock or repla witch.         Matomatic shifting check       Start engine.       OK Check completed.         Automatic shifting check       Start engine.       NOT OK Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto light) mode.         LOOK : Automatic sign on cluster. Move gear selector lever to forward o				
Move gear selector lever to forward "F" position.       "F" position.         Increase engine speed to high idle for 30 seconds.       Move gear selector lever to neutral "N" position and run for 15 seconds.         Repeat procedure until transmission temperature gauge arrow points to bar above dial.       OK Check completed.         Move gear selector lever to each position.       Move gear selector lever to each position.       OK Check completed.         NOTE: Gear selector lever position column is tilted.       NOTE : Gear selector lever position column is tilted.       NOT C K Repair lock or repla switch.         FEEL: Lever must move freely through all positions.       NOT K: Neutral lock.       NOT CK Repair lock or repla switch.         Automatic shifting check       Start engine.       Nove gear selector lever to forward flight) mode.       OK Check completed.         Automatic shifting check       Start engine.       Move gear selector lever to forward flight) mode.       OK Check completed.         Automatic shifting check       Start engine.       NOT OK Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto light) mode.       OK Check completed.         Automatic rower       Colock : Automatic sign on cluster.       Move gear selector lever to forward or reverse position.       NOT OK Check completed.         Automatic mode       Colock : Automatic sign on cluster.       Move gear selector lever to forward or reverse position.       NOT OK Check completed.         NOT OK       Select T/M			-	
for 30 seconds.       Move gear selector lever to neutral "N" position and run for 15 seconds.         Repeat procedure until transmission temperature gauge arrow points to bar above dial.       OK         Gear selector lever and neutral lock latch checks       Move gear selector lever to each position.       OK         Engine OFF.       Move gear selector lever position changes slightly as steering column is tilted.       NOT CK         FEEL : Lever must move freely through all positions.       FEEL : Lever must move freely through all positions.       NOT OK         LOOK : Neutral lock.       Apply slight effort to move lever into forward (F) and reverse (R).       OK       Not egar selector lever to 4th speed.         Automatic shifting check       Start engine.       Move gear selector lever to 4th speed.       NOT OK         Automatic shifting check       Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto light) mode.       NOT OK         Automatic shifting check       Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto light) mode.       Go to transmission fa code group at page 3-5 3-66-31.         Automatic mode       Increase engine rpm.       LOOK : Speed on cluster must       Repair or replace the monitor or harness.				
Image: Seconds.       Repeat procedure until transmission temperature gauge arrow points to bar above dial.       OK         Gear selector lever and neutral lock latch checks       Move gear selector lever to each position.       OK         Engine OFF.       Image: Selector lever position changes slightly as steering column is tilted.       NOT OK         FEEL : Lever must move freely through all positions.       Figage neutral lock.       NOT OK         Engage neutral lock.       Apply slight effort to move lever into forward (F) and reverse (R).       OK         LOOK : Neutral lock must stay engaged.       Start engine.       OK         Automatic shifting check       Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto light) mode.       OK         Automatic mode       Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto reverse position.       NOT OK         Automatic mode       Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto reverse position.       NOT OK         Automatic mode       Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto reverse position.       NOT OK         Automatic mode       Increase engine rpm.       NOT OK       Not or replace the monitor or harness.         Automatic mode       Increase engine rpm.       Increase engine rpm.       Not or harness.			•	
Gear selector lever and neutral lock latch checks       Move gear selector lever to each position.       OK         Engine OFF.       NOTE : Gear selector lever position changes slightly as steering column is tilted.       NOT OK         FEEL : Lever must move freely through all positions.       FEEL : Lever must move freely through all positions.       NOT OK         LOOK : Neutral lock.       Apply slight effort to move lever into forward (F) and reverse (R).       OK         LOOK : Neutral lock must stay engaged.       Start engine.       OK         Automatic shifting check       Start engine.       OK         Automatic shifting check       Automatic mode       Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto light) mode.       OK         Automatic mode       LOOK : Automatic sign on cluster.       NOT OK       Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto i reverse position.         Increase engine rpm.       LOOK : Speed on cluster must       NOT OK       Select rever to forward or reverse position.			"N" position and run for 15	
neutral lock latch checks       position.       Check completed.         Engine OFF:       NOTE : Gear selector lever position changes slightly as steering column is tilted.       NOT OK         FEEL : Lever must move freely through all positions.       FEEL : Lever must move freely through all positions.       NOT OK         Engage neutral lock.       Apply slight effort to move lever into forward (F) and reverse (R).       OK       Check completed.         Automatic shifting check       Start engine.       Move gear selector lever to 4th speed.       OK         AL mode       Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto light) mode.       NOT OK       Go to transmission fa code group at page 3-5 3-66-31.         Automatic mode       Increase engine rpm.       LOOK : Speed on cluster must       Repair or replace the monitor or harness.			transmission temperature gauge	
Automatic shifting check       NOT E: Gear selector lever position changes slightly as steering column is tilted.       NOT OK Repair lock or repla switch.         FEEL : Lever must move freely through all positions.       FEEL : Lever must move freely through all positions.       NOT OK         Engage neutral lock.       Apply slight effort to move lever into forward (F) and reverse (R).       OK         LOOK : Neutral lock must stay engaged.       Start engine.       OK         Move gear selector lever to 4th speed.       Move gear selector lever to 4th speed.       OK         Automatic mode       Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto light) mode.       NOT OK         LOOK : Automatic sign on cluster.       Move gear selector lever to forward or reverse position.       NOT ok         Automatic mode       Increase engine rpm.       LOOK : Speed on cluster must       Repair or replace the monitor or harness.	neutral lock latch checks			
Automatic shifting check       FEEL : Lever must move freely through all positions.         Automatic shifting check       Engage neutral lock.         Automatic shifting check       Start engine.         Automatic shifting check       Start engine.         Automatic shifting check       Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto light) mode.         LOOK : Automatic sign on cluster.       Nove gear selector lever to forward or reverse position.         Automatic mode       LOOK : Automatic sign on cluster.         Automatic mode       Move gear selector lever to forward or reverse position.         Increase engine rpm.       LOOK : Speed on cluster must	Engine OFF.		changes slightly as steering	Repair lock or replace
Apply slight effort to move lever into forward (F) and reverse (R).         LOOK : Neutral lock must stay engaged.         Automatic shifting check       Start engine.         Move gear selector lever to 4th speed.         AL mode         Automatic mode         Automatic mode         Increase engine rpm.         LOOK : Speed on cluster must		9		
Automatic shifting check       Start engine.       OK         Automatic shifting check       Move gear selector lever to 4th speed.       NOT OK         Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto light) mode.       LOOK : Automatic sign on cluster.       NOT OK         Automatic mode       Move gear selector lever to forward or reverse position.       Nove gear selector lever to forward or reverse position.       Not or harness.         Increase engine rpm.       LOOK : Speed on cluster must       Not or harness.			Engage neutral lock.	
Automatic shifting check       Start engine.       OK         Automatic shifting check       Move gear selector lever to 4th speed.       OK         AL mode       Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto light) mode.       NOT OK         LOOK : Automatic sign on cluster.       Move gear selector lever to forward or reverse position.       Select T/M shift mode to forward or reverse position.       NOT ok         Automatic mode       LOOK : Automatic sign on cluster.       Move gear selector lever to forward or reverse position.       Select T/M shift mode to forward or reverse position.       Select T/M shift mode to forward or reverse position.				
Move gear selector lever to 4th speed.Check completed.AL modeSelect T/M shift mode to AL (auto light) mode.NOT OK Go to transmission fa code group at page 3-5 3-66-31.Automatic modeLOOK : Automatic sign on cluster.Move gear selector lever to forward or reverse position.Repair or replace the monitor or harness.Automatic modeIncrease engine rpm. LOOK : Speed on cluster mustLOOK : Speed on cluster must				
AL mode       Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto light) mode.       NOT OK         LOOK : Automatic sign on cluster.       Move gear selector lever to forward or reverse position.       Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto light) mode.         Automatic mode       LOOK : Automatic sign on cluster.       Move gear selector lever to forward or reverse position.         Increase engine rpm.       LOOK : Speed on cluster must	Automatic shifting check		Start engine.	•••
Iight) mode.Code group at page 3-5LOOK : Automatic sign on cluster.Code group at page 3-5Automatic modeMove gear selector lever to forward or reverse position.Code group at page 3-5Increase engine rpm.Increase engine rpm.LOOK : Speed on cluster must			•	
Automatic mode       Move gear selector lever to forward or reverse position.       Repair or replace the monitor or harness.         Automatic mode       Increase engine rpm.       LOOK : Speed on cluster must				Go to transmission fault code group at page 3-50~
Automatic mode       Move gear selector lever to forward or reverse position.       monitor or harness.         Increase engine rpm.       LOOK : Speed on cluster must		9447 MODE	LOOK : Automatic sign on cluster.	
LOOK : Speed on cluster must		Automatic mode	•	
			Increase engine rpm.	
DEF LEVEL : 0 %			•	

Item		Description	Service action
Transmission noise check Engine running.		Run engine at approximately 1600 rpm. Drive unit with transmission in each forward and reverse speed. LISTEN : Transmission must not make excessive noise in any range. Engine rpm must not "lug down" as unit is shifted between gears.	Check completed.
Transmission "quick shift" check Engine running.		<ul> <li>unit is shifted between gears.</li> <li>Release parking brake and select T/M shift mode to MANUAL mode.</li> <li>Shift to 2nd forward.</li> <li>Drive machine at approximately 5km/h and press gear selector lever kick down switch or RCV levers switch once.</li> <li>LOOK/FEEL : Transmission must shift to and remain in 1st gear.</li> <li>Press gear selector lever kick down switch once.</li> <li>LOOK/FEEL : Transmission must shift to (3rd or 4th) gear and press gear selector lever kick down switch once.</li> <li>LOOK/FEEL : Transmission must shift back to 2nd gear.</li> <li>Shift to (3rd or 4th) gear and press gear selector lever kick down switch once.</li> <li>LOOK/FEEL : Transmission must shift back to 2nd gear.</li> <li>Shift to (3rd or 4th) gear and press gear selector lever kick down switch once.</li> <li>LOOK/FEEL : Transmission must not shift down.</li> <li>Select T/M shift mode to AL (auto light) mode.</li> <li>Drive machine at approximately 90% speed of max speed in each gear (2nd or 3rd or 4th).</li> <li>Shift to (2nd or 3rd or 4th) gear in each forward and reverse speed and press gear selector kick down lever switch or RCV lever switch once.</li> <li>LOOK/FEEL :</li> <li>If shift down quickly from current gear to one step lower speed and recover to original speed quickly when push the switch one more time. (mode 1)</li> <li>If shifts down from current gear to one step lower speed when push</li> </ul>	Check completed. <b>NOT OK</b> Check connector at base of control valve. <b>IF OK</b> Go to transmission controller circuit in group 1.
	AL mode	light) mode. Drive machine at approximately 90% speed of max speed in each gear (2nd or 3rd or 4th). Shift to (2nd or 3rd or 4th) gear in each forward and reverse speed and press gear selector kick down lever switch or RCV lever switch once. <b>LOOK/FEEL :</b> If shift down quickly from current gear to one step lower speed and recover to original speed quickly when push the switch one more time. (mode 1)	

Item		Description	Service action
Forward, reverse and 4th		Park unit on level surface.	ОК
speed clutch pack drag		Apply service brakes.	Check completed.
* Transmission must		Move gear selector lever to neutral.	<b>NOT OK</b> If unit moves, repair
be warmed up for this check.	Release	Move gear selector lever to 1st.	transmission.
Engine running.		Release parking brake and service brakes.	
		Run engine at low idle.	
		<b>LOOK</b> : Unit must not move in either direction.	
		<b>NOTE</b> : If unit moves forward, either the forward pack or the 4th speed pack is dragging.	
Transmission shift modulation check		Run engine at approximately 1300 rpm.	OK Check completed.
Engine running.		Put transmission in 1st forward, shift several times from forward to reverse and reverse to forward. Repeat check in 2nd gear.	
		<b>LOOK</b> : Unit must slow down and change direction smoothly.	
Torque converter check		Start engine. Apply service brakes and release parking brake.	OK Check completed.
		Move gear selector lever to 3rd speed.	If stall rpm are too low or
		Move gear selector control lever to forward "F" position.	too high, problem may be engine power or torque converter.
		Increase engine speed to high idle.	IF OK
		$\begin{array}{l} \textbf{LOOK}: \text{Torque converter stall rpm} \\ \text{must be within the following range.} \\ \text{Stall rpm}: \ \texttt{2100} {}^{\pm} \texttt{100} \text{ rpm} \end{array}$	Replace transmission torque converter.
		Move gear selector control lever to neutral "N" position and run for 15 seconds.	

## 2. TROUBLESHOOTING

- 1) TRANSMISSION
- \* Diagnose malfunction charts are arranged from most probable and simplest to verify, to least likely, more difficult to verify. Remember the following steps when troubleshooting a problem :

Step 1. Operational check out procedure (See group 3 in section 1.)

Step 2. Operational checks (In this group.)

Step 3. Troubleshooting

Step 4. Tests and/or adjustments (See group 3.)

Problem	Cause	Remedy
Transmission slippage	Low oil level.	Add oil.
	Wrong oil grade.	Change oil.
	Restricted transmission pump suction screen.	Remove and clean screen.
	Leak in transmission control valve or gasket.	Remove valve and inspect gaskets.
	Low transmission pump flow due to worn pump.	Do transmission pump flow test.
	Weak or broken pressure regulat- ing valve spring.	Do transmission system pressure test.
Error code on display	Something wrong in transmission.	Go to transmission fault code group at page 3-50~3-66-31.

Problem	Cause	Remedy
Machine will not move	Low oil level.	Add oil.
	Applied park brake.	Check parking brake fuse. Check continuity to parking brake switch.
	No power to transmission contro- ller.	Check transmission controller fuse.
	Malfunctioning parking brake solenoid valve.	Remove and inspect parking brake solenoid valve. Check for power to solenoid valve.
	Restricted orifice of PPC valve.	Remove orifice and check for contamination and/or plugging. (Do not remove valve housing for this purpose.)
	Excessive leakage in transmission element.	Do transmission element leakage test using system pressure.
	Worn clutch disks.	Repair transmission.
	Low or no transmission pressure.	See transmission pressure is low in this group.
	Service brake will not release.	Do brake pedal operational check. Do service and park system drag checks.
	Failed torque converter.	Do torque converter stall test. If engine pulldown in normal, torque converter is good.
	Broken shafts or gears.	Drain transmission to determine if large pieces of metal contamination are present.
	Broken drive shafts.	Inspect drive shafts and universal joints for external damage. Repair.
	Broken ring or pinion gear.	If drive shaft rotate with transmission in gear but machine does not move, a differential failure is indicated. Repair.
Machine does not engage in low gear	Malfunctioning transmission control solenoid valve.	Check solenoid valve.
	Stuck spool in transmission control valve.	Remove and inspect transmission control valve spools.
	Stuck PPC valve.	Remove end cover to inspect PPC valve. Replace if necessary.
	Malfunctioning transmission speed sensor.	Check speed sensor.

Problem	Cause	Remedy	
Transmission pressure is low (all gears)	Low oil level.	Check transmission oil level and refill if necessary.	
	Failed transmission pressure switch.	Verify transmission system pressure. Do transmission system pressure test.	
	Plugged suction strainer.	Transmission pump may be noisy if transmission suction screen is clogged. Drain transmission. Remove and clean suction screen. Also, check condition of transmission filter.	
	Stuck transmission pressure regulating valve or broken spring.	Remove transmission pressure regulating valve. Inspect for damage (See transmission control valve).	
	Failed control valve gasket.	Inspect transmission control valve for external leakage. Remove control valve. Inspect or replace gasket.	
	Stuck PPC valve.	Remove end cover to inspect modulation spool and check torque on cap screws retaining control valve to transmission.	
Transmission system	Failed transmission pump.	Do pump flow test.	
pressure is low (one or two gears)	Failed transmission control valve gasket.	Inspect transmission control valve for external leakage. Remove control valve. Inspect or replace gasket.	
	Leakage in clutch piston or seal ring.	Disassemble and repair.	
Transmission shifts too	Low oil level (aeration of oil).	Add oil.	
low	Low transmission pressure.	Do transmission system pressure test.	
	Restricted transmission pump suction screen.	Remove and clean screen.	
	Low transmission pump flow.	Do transmission pump flow test.	
	Excessive transmission element leakage.	Do transmission element leakage test using system pressure.	
	Stuck PPC valve.	Remove end cover to inspect modulation spool. Replace if necessary.	
	Restricted PPC valve orifice.	Remove orifice and inspect for contamination and /or plugging.	
	Restricted oil passages between control valve and transmission elements.	Remove control valve and inspect oil passage.	
	Incorrect transmission oil.	Change oil (SAE 10W-30/15W-40)	

Problem	Cause	Remedy	
Transmission shifts too fast	Wrong transmission controller.	Check if transmission controller has been changed	
	System pressure too high.	Do transmission system pressure test.	
	Stuck PPC valve.	Remove and inspect PPC valve. Replace if necessary. Also remove end cover to inspect PPC valve and control valve housing. Replace if necessary.	
	Stuck or missing check valves.	Inspect transmission control valve.	
	Missing O-ring from end of modulation orifice.	Remove orifice and inspect port for O-ring.	
	Broken piston return spring.	Disassemble and inspect clutch.	
	Incorrect transmission oil.	Change oil (SAE 10W-30/15W-40).	
Machine "creeps" in neutral	Warped disks and plates in transmission.	Check transmission.	
Transmission hydraulic system overheats	High oil level.	Transmission overfilled or hydraulic pump seal leaking.	
	Low oil level.	Add oil.	
	Wrong oil grade.	Change oil.	
	Park brake dragging.	Check for heat in park brake area.	
	Pinched, restricted or leaking lube lines.	Check cooler lines.	
	Machine operated in too high gear range.	Operate machine in correct gear range.	
	Malfunction in temperature gauge or sensor.	Install temperature sensor the verify temperature. Do tachometer/temperature reader installation procedure.	
	Restricted air flow through oil cooler or radiator.	Do radiator air flow test.	
	Failed oil cooler bypass valve (In thermal bypass valve).	Disassemble and inspect.	
	Failed thermal bypass valve.	Remove thermal bypass valve and check to see if machine still overheats. Do transmission oil cooler thermal bypass valve test.	
	Internally restricted oil cooler.	Do oil cooler restriction test.	
	Leakage in transmission hydraulic system.	Do transmission system pressure, element leakage test.	
	Malfunction in converter relief valve.	Do converter out pressure test.	
	Low transmission pump output.	Do transmission pump flow test.	

Problem	Cause	Remedy
Excessive transmission	Too low engine low idle.	Check engine low idle speed.
noise (Under load or no load)	Worn parts or damaged in transmission.	Remove transmission suction screen. Inspect for metal particles. Repair as necessary.
	Warped drive line between engine and torque converter.	Inspect drive line.
	Low or no lube.	Do converter-out and lube pressure test. Do transmission pump flow test.
Foaming oil	Incorrect type of oil.	Change oil.
	High oil level.	Transmission overfilled or hydraulic pump seal leaking.
	Low oil level.	Add oil.
	Air leak on suction side of pump.	Check oil pickup tube on side of transmission.
Oil ejected from dipstick	Plugged breather.	Inspect breather on top of transmission. Replace.
Machine vibrates	Aerated oil.	Add oil.
	Low engine speed.	Check engine speed.
	Failed universal joints on transmission drive shaft or differential drive shafts.	Check universal joints.
Machine lacks power and acceleration	Engine high idle speed set too low.	Check high idle adjustment.
	Incorrect transmission oil.	Change oil.
	Aerated oil.	Add oil.
	Low transmission pressure.	Do transmission system pressure test.
	Warped transmission clutch.	Do transmission clutch drag checks.
	Torn transmission control valve gasket.	Inspect gasket.
	Brake drag.	Do brake drag check.
	Failed torque converter.	Do torque converter stall speed test.
	Low engine power.	Do engine power test.
Torque converter stall RPM too high	Aerated oil.	Put clear hose on thermal bypass outlet port. Run machine to check for bubbles in oil.
	Stuck open converter relief valve.	Do converter-out pressure test.
	Leakage in torque converter seal.	Do converter-out pressure test.
	Torque converter not transferring power (Bent fins, broken starter).	Replace torque converter.

Problem	Cause	Remedy
Torque converter stall	Low engine power.	Do engine power test.
RPM too low	Mechanical malfunction.	Remove and inspect torque converter.
Transmission pressure	Low oil level.	Add oil.
light comes ON when shifting from forward to	Cold oil.	Warm oil to specification.
reverse (all other gears OK)	Leak in reverse pack.	Do transmission pressure, pump flow, and leakage check.
Transmission pressure light comes ON for each shift	Cold oil.	Warm oil to specification.
	No time delay in monitor.	Do monitor check.
	Restriction in modulation orifice.	Remove orifice and inspect for restriction and/or plugging.
	Stuck PPC valve.	Remove and inspect.
	Low transmission pressure circuit.	Do transmission system pressure test.
	Leak in transmission pressure circuit.	Do converter out pressure test.
	Failed transmission pump.	Do transmission pump flow test.
	Clogged filter.	Inspect filter. Replace.

### 2) DIFFERENTIAL / AXLE

Problem	Cause	Remedy	
Differential low on oil	External leakage.	Inspect axle and differential for leaks.	
Excessive differential and/or axle noise	Low oil level in differential.	Check oil. Remove drain plug and inspect for metal particles in differential case. Disassemble and determine cause.	
	Incorrect type of oil.	Change oil	
	Dragging brakes.	Do brake check.	
	Failed pinion bearing.	Remove and inspect pinion. Check to ensure pinion housing was indexed.	
	Incorrect gear mesh pattern between ring and pinion gear.	Remove pinion gear housing and inspect ring and pinion gear.	
	Failed differential pinion gears and/or cross shafts.	Remove differential housing drain plug and inspect for metal particles. Disassemble and inspect.	
	Failed axle bearing.	Do axle bearing adjustment check.	
	Mechanical failure in axle planetary.	Remove differential. Inspect, repair.	
Oil seeping from outer	Excessive end play in axle.	Do axle bearing adjustment check.	
axle seal	Worn outer bearing and/or cup.	Disassemble and inspect outer axle bearing, cup, spacer, and seal. Replace, if necessary.	
	Overfilled differential.	Check differential oil return system for excessive internal restriction.	
Axle overheats	Low differential oil.	Add oil.	
	Overfilled differential.	See differential overfills with oil in this group.	
	Brake drag.	See brakes drag in this group.	

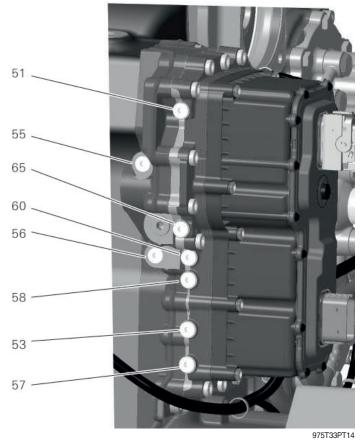
### 3) DRIVE LINE

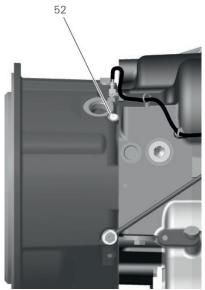
Problem	Cause	Remedy
	Yokes not in line on drive shafts.	Inspect. Align drive shaft yokes.
vibration or noise	Worn front drive line support bearing.	Inspect, repair.
	Bent drive shaft.	Inspect all drive shafts. Replace.
	Loose yoke retaining nuts (drive shafts wobble at high speed).	Inspect. Replace.
	Rear axle oscillating support.	Inspect, repair.
	Lack of lubrication.	Lubricate with proper grade of grease.

## **GROUP 3 TESTS AND ADJUSTMENTS**

### 1. TRANSMISSION MEASURING POINTS AND CONNECTIONS

The measurements have to be carried out at hot transmission (about 80~95°C).





975T33PT15

975133P114

Port	Description	Size
51	Pressure before converter (maximum 9+2 bar)	M12×1.5
52	Pressure after converter (5 bar)	M12×1.5
53	Shift pressure clutch K4 (16+2 bar)	M12×1.5
55	Shift pressure clutch K1 (16+2 bar)	M12×1.5
56	Shift pressure clutch K2 (16+2 bar)	M12×1.5
57	Shift pressure clutch KR (16+2 bar)	M12×1.5
58	Shift pressure clutch K3 (16+2 bar)	M12×1.5
60	Shift pressure clutch KV (16+2 bar)	M12×1.5
65	System pressure (16+2.5 bar)	M12×1.5

### 1.TRANSMISSION

**Preparatory Activities** 

Mounting transmission on assembly truck

Special tools:

- 5870.350.071 Clamping bracket
- 5870.350.000 Assembly truck

## 1. WARNING

Risk of injury due to uncontrolled motion of the load.

#### Death or serious injury possible.

- ⇒ Only use the suspension points intended for transportation purposes.
- Only use secure, permitted, and tested means of transport, chain hoist, and lifting equipment with sufficient load capacity and suitable lifting technology.
- Ensure that lifting equipment such as ropes and belts are not in contact with sharp edges and are not knotted or twisted.
- ⇒ Properly attach lifting appliances to load.
- Observe the load's center of gravity! The crane hook must be located above the load's center of gravity.
- ⇒ Lift load slowly and observe whether the load tilts or swivels out laterally. If required, immediately put down load and modify attachment.
- ⇒ Keep distance.
- $\Rightarrow$  Do not walk under suspended loads.
- $\Rightarrow$  Only ever move load under supervision.

Fix the transmission with 5870.350.071 [Clamping bracket] to 5870.350.000 [Assembly truck].

#### Draining oil



Observe the environmental regulations (refer to Section General safety instructions, page 8).



Fig. 21

- 1. Loosen screw plug (1).
- 2. Loosen the screw plug (2) and drain oil.

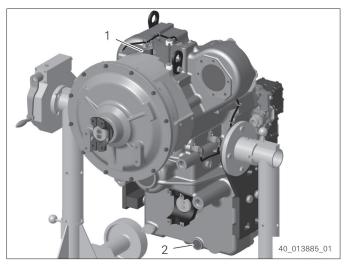


Fig. 22

### Removing the pressure filters

- 1. Loosen the pressure filters (1)from the filter head.
- 2. Loosen the plunger switch (2).
  - \* The filter head is located near the transmission.

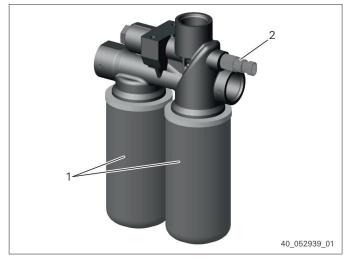
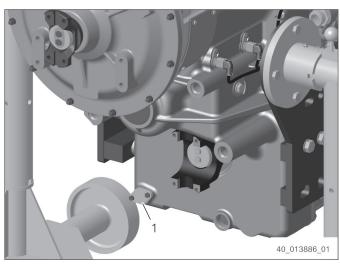


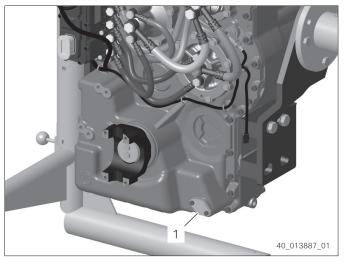
Fig. 23

### Removing cover sheets (filler neck)

 Loosen hexagon screws and remove cover sheet with seal (1).



2. Loosen hexagon screws and remove cover sheet with seal (1).



### Removing tube

Loosen hollow screws (1) and remove tube (2).

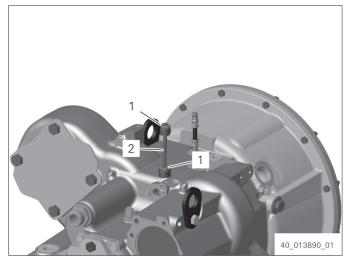


Fig. 28

### Removing the hose assemblies

1. Loosen hollow screws and hose assemblies.

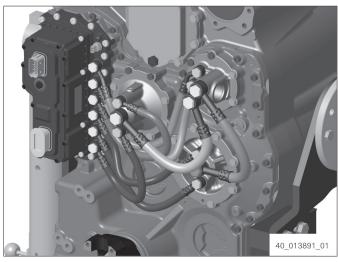


Fig. 29

### Removing the speed sensors

- 1. Loosen the cap screw.
- 2. Pull the speed sensor (1) out of the cover.

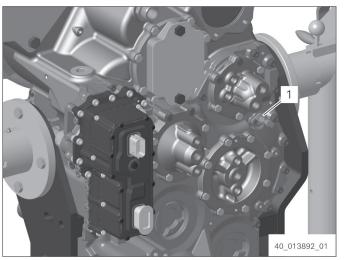


Fig. 30

- 3. Loosen cap screws.
- 4. Pull speed sensors (1) out of the housing.

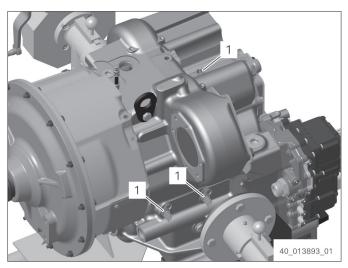


Fig. 31

### Removing the temperature sensors and the breather

- 1. Loosen breather (1).
- 2. Loosen the temperature sensors (2).

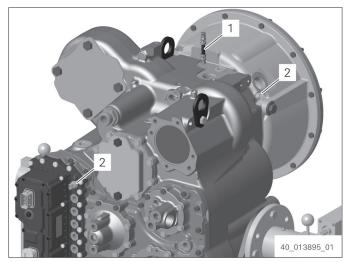


Fig. 32

#### Removing the converter pressure back-up valve

1. Loosen screw plug (1).

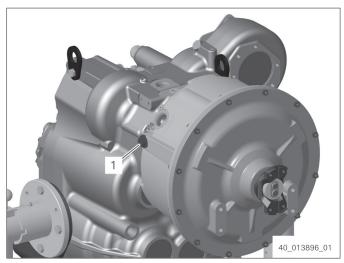


Fig. 33

- 2. Remove compression spring (1).
- 3. Pull the piston (2) from the torque converter bell housing.

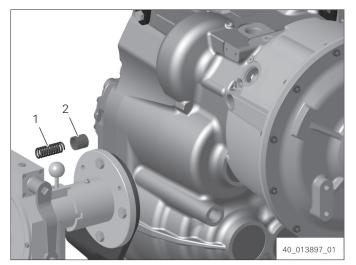
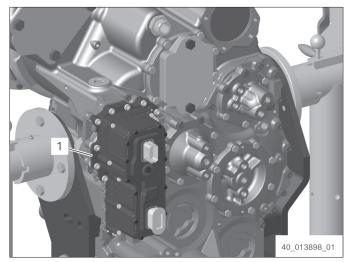


Fig. 34

### Removing and dismantling shift system

### Removing control unit (ECA4)

- 1. Loosen internal hexalobular bolts.
- 2. Remove control unit (1).



### Removing the pressure controllers

- 1. Separate plug connections (1) on the pressure controllers.
- 2. Loosen internal hexalobular bolts and remove fixing plate (3).
- 3. Remove cable (2).

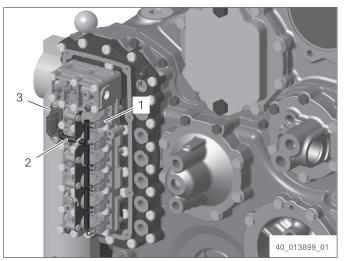


Fig. 36

- 4. Loosen internal hexalobular bolts and remove clamping plate (2).
- 5. Pull out the pressure controllers (1).

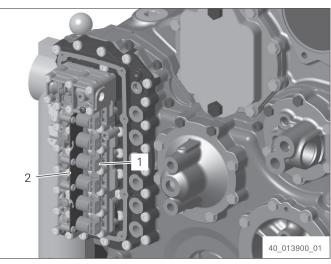


Fig. 37

### Removing and dismantling valve blocks

Special tools:

- AA02.414.200 Driver tool
- AA02.416.754 Driver tool
- AA02.416.230 Driver tool

 Loosen internal hexalobular bolts. Remove valve block (1) and intermediate plate.

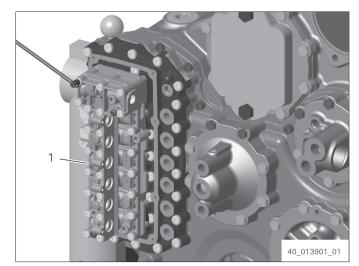


Fig. 38

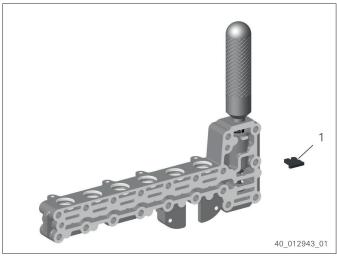


Fig. 39



 Press the piston inwards with AA02.414.200 [Driver tool] and remove the fixing plate (1).

Remove compression spring (2) and piston (1) from the hole.

 Loosen internal hexalobular bolts. Remove valve block (1) and intermediate plate.

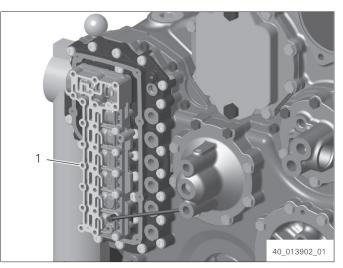


Fig. 41

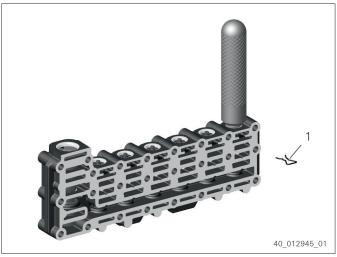
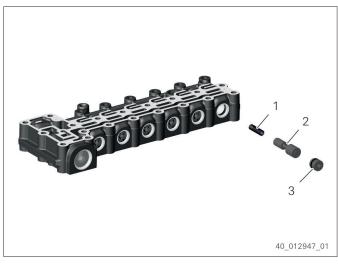


Fig. 42





5. Press the plug inwards with AA02.416.754 [Driver tool] and remove the spring clip (1).

- 6. Pull the plug (3) out of the hole.
- 7. Remove control piston (2) and compression spring (1) from the hole.

 Press the plug inwards using AA02.416.230 [Driver tool] and remove fixing plate (1).

Pull the plug (3) out of the hole.

piston (1) from the hole.

Remove compression spring (2) and control

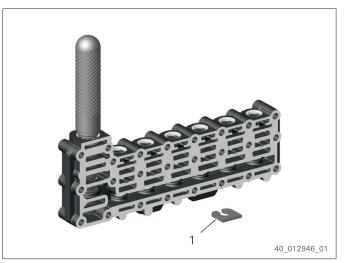


Fig. 44

Fig. 45

Removing duct plate

9.

10.

1. Remove valves (1) from duct plate.

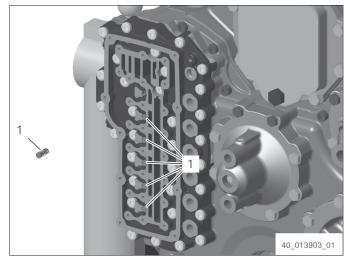


Fig. 46

2. Loosen internal hexalobular bolts. Remove duct plate (1) and seal.

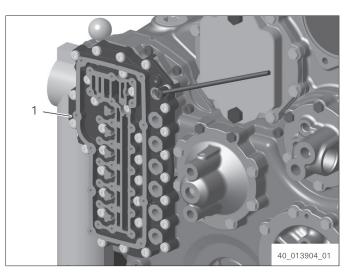


Fig. 47

3. Remove screw plugs (1) from duct plate.

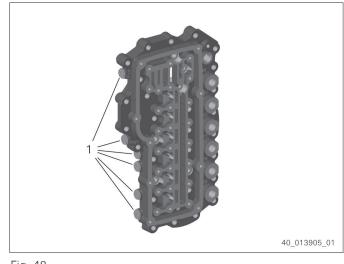
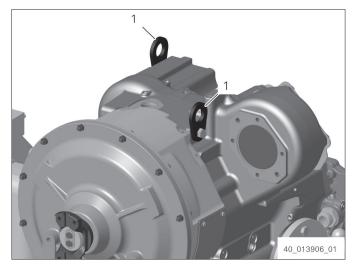


Fig. 48

### Removing fixing plates

1. Loosen hexagon screws and remove fixing plates (1).



### Removing engine connection and converter

Special tools:

- AA02.676.915 Load ring
- Mark installation position of the cover towards the torque converter bell housing.
- 2. Loosen hexagon nuts (1) and remove hexagon screws (2).

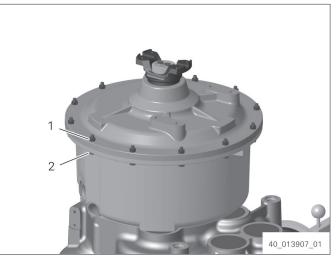


Fig. 50

## 3. **CAUTION**

Risk of crushing due to moving parts.Slight or moderate injury possible.⇒ Do not reach into danger area!

Lift off the cover and the converter using two AA02.676.915 [Load ring] and the crane.



- 4. Remove locking plate (1).
- 5. Loosen hexagon screws (2).
- 6. Remove washer (3).



Fig. 52

7. Use two-armed extractor to pull output flange from flange shaft.



Fig. 53

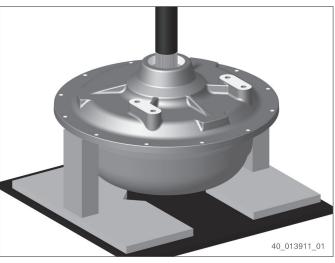


Fig. 54

# 8. **CAUTION**

Risk of crushing due to hydraulic tool. Slight to moderate injury possible. ⇒ Do not reach into danger area.

Force flange shaft and converter out of the cover.

- 9. Remove V-ring (1).
- 10. Pull the ball bearing (2) out of the cover.



Fig. 55

1

Fig. 56

 ۱
 2

 ۷
 2

 ۷
 2

 ۷
 2

 ۷
 2

 ۷
 2

 ۷
 2

 ۷
 2

 ۷
 2



11. Remove R-ring (1).

- 12. Loosen hexagon screws (1).
- 13. Remove flange shaft (2).

#### Dismantling drive

Special tools:

- 5870.204.005 Hexagon screw
- 5870.000.089 Press-out device
- 5870.345.036 Pry bar
- AA02.247.426 Eyebolt
- 1. Loosen hollow screws (2).
- 2. Remove oil tube (1).

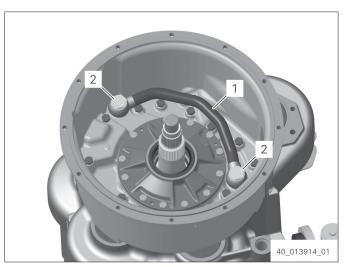


Fig. 58

- 3. Loosen hexagon screws.
- 4. Evenly pull off bearing cover with three 5870.204.005 [Hexagon screw ].

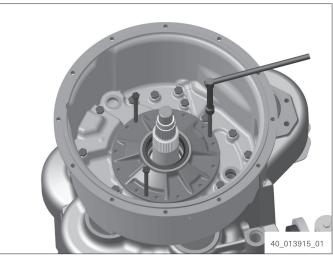


Fig. 59

- 5. Remove shaft sealing ring (1) from bearing cover.
- 6. Remove needle sleeve (2).



Fig. 60

- Fasten 5870.000.089 [Press-out device] to the oil feed flange with two cap screws M12 x 50.
- Pull oil feed flange evenly out of torque converter bell housing by means of 5870.000.089 [Press-out device].

Remove slotted pin (1).

Remove converter safety valve (2).

9.

10.

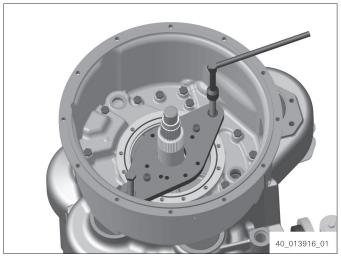


Fig. 61

40\_013578\_01

Fig. 62

- 11. Loosen hexagon screws.
- 12. Remove torque converter bell housing using 5870.345.036 [Pry bar], two AA02.247.426 [Eyebolt] and a crane.
- 13. Remove seal.



Fig. 63

Fig. 64

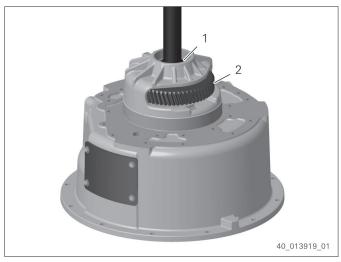


Fig. 65

14. Remove R-rings (1) from input shaft.

# 15. **CAUTION**

Risk of crushing due to hydraulic tool.Slight to moderate injury possible.⇒ Do not reach into danger area.

Press out the input shaft.

- 16. Remove bearing inner ring (1).
- 17. Remove helical gear (2).

18. Force bearing inner ring from input shaft.

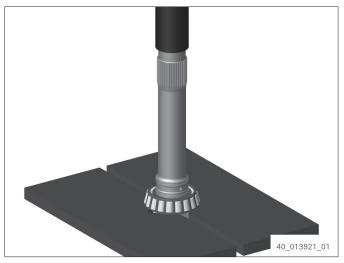


Fig. 66

19. Remove bearing outer rings (1).

Remove protection caps (1).

21.

20. Loosen the hexagon screws and remove the cover sheet (2) and the cover plate (3).

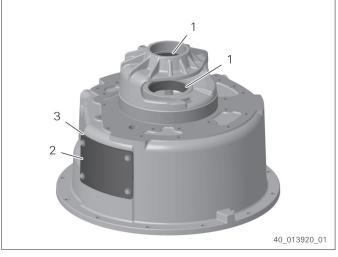


Fig. 67

Fig. 68

Removing and dismantling the power take-offs (variant with PTO) 1, 3 and 4)

#### Removing shaft

Special tools:

- 5873.001.020 Gripping device
- 5873.001.000 Basic tool
- 1. Loosen hexagon screws and remove the cover (1).

Remove shaft with gear (1) from the

2. Remove O-ring.

transmission.

3.

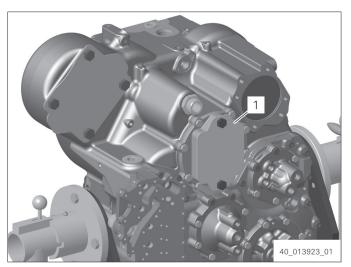


Fig. 69

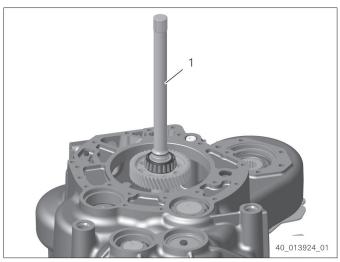


Fig. 70

40\_013926\_01

- 4. Remove R-ring (1) from annular groove of the shaft.
- 5. Remove parallel key (2).

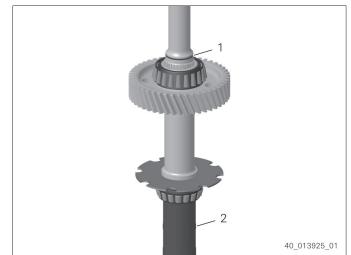


Fig. 71

Fig. 72

40\_013927\_01



6. Pull off gear (1).

8.

7. Remove retaining ring (2).

Pull off bearing inner ring with

5873.001.020 [Gripping device] and 5873.001.000 [Basic tool] from gear.

9. Use protective chucks made from aluminum.

Fix shaft in the vise.

- 10. Loosen the cap screw.
- 11. Remove spring washer.

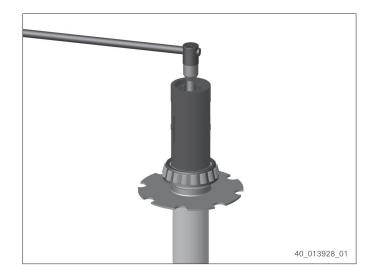


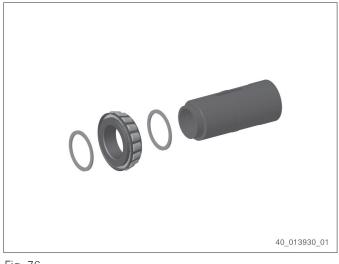
Fig. 74

12. Pull off bearing inner ring and driver with three-armed extractor from the shaft.



Fig. 75

13. Pull off the bearing inner ring and discs from the driver.



### Removing pressure oil pump

Special tools:

- AA02.813.910 Puller
- 1. Loosen hexagon screws.
- 2. Remove pump flange (1).
- 3. Remove O-ring.

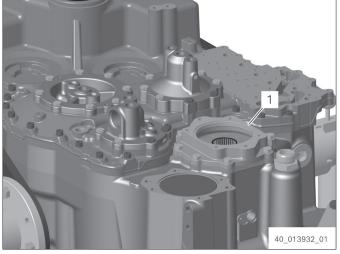
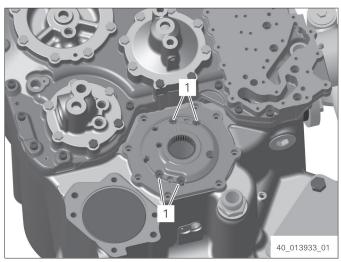


Fig. 77

4. Loosen cap screws (1).



- 5. Fasten AA02.813.910 [Puller] to gear pump with four cap screws M8 x 65.
- 6. Pull gear pump evenly out of housing hole by means of AA02.813.910 [Puller].

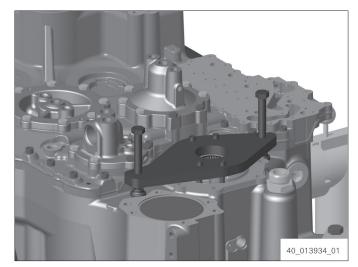


Fig. 79

- 7. Pull bearing outer ring (1) out of the gear pump.
- 8. Remove O-ring (2).



Fig. 80

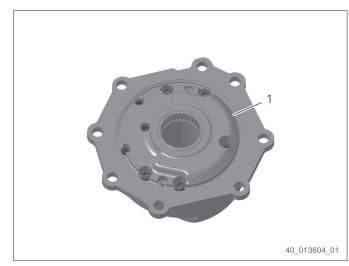
#### Checking gear pump

9. Check individual parts of the gear pump for wear marks before assembling the transmission.

The gear pump is only available as a complete unit.

Loosen cap screws.

- 10. Remove cover (1).
- Check the cover, outer rotor, inner rotor and the pump housing for wear marks.
   In case of any damage, install **new** gear pump.

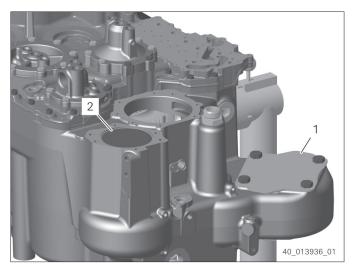


- 12. Insert outer rotor and inner rotor, with the chamfered tooth side facing the pump housing.
- 13. Insert cylindrical pins until contact is obtained.
- 14. Place the cover.
- Bolt in and tighten cap screws.
   Tightening torque: 23 Nm
   Tightening torque: 9.5 Nm

#### Removing PTOs 3 and 4

Special tools:

- AA02.242.247 Extracting device
- AA02.571.771 Adapter
- Loosen hexagon screws and remove cover (1).
- 2. Remove O-ring.
- 3. Remove sealing cap (2) from the housing hole.



 Pull pin (1) with AA02.242.247 [Extracting device] and AA02.571.771 [Adapter] out of the housing hole. Remove gear (2), bearing inner rings and shim.

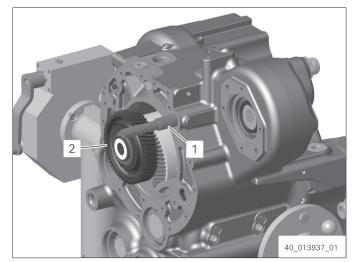


Fig. 83

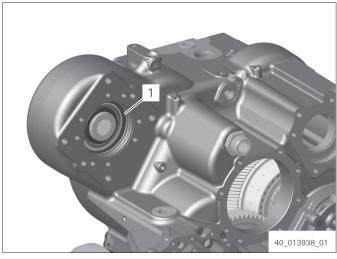


Fig. 84

Fig. 85

5. Remove retaining ring (1).

Force out driver (1) and remove gear.

Remove both ball bearings.

6. Remove shim.

7.

8.

### Removing countershaft

Special tools:

- AA02.242.247 Extracting device
- AA02.242.584 Adapter
- 1. Remove cover.
- 2. Loosen hexagon screw (1).

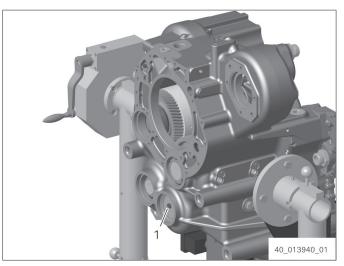


Fig. 86

- Fig. 87

3. Use AA02.242.247 [Extracting device] and AA02.242.584 [Adapter] to pull axle out of housing.

### Removing yokes

Removing yoke on converter side

- 1. Remove locking plate (1).
- 2. Loosen hexagon screws (2).
- 3. Remove washer (3).

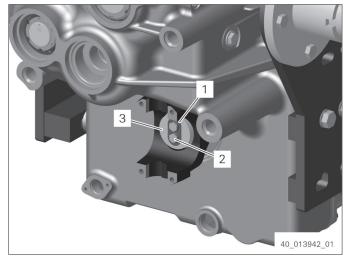


Fig. 88

- 4. Remove washer (1).
- 5. Remove O-ring (2).

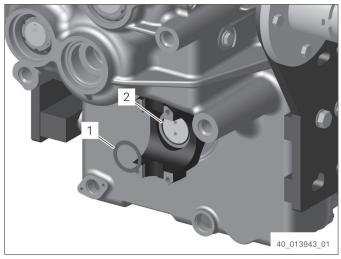


Fig. 89

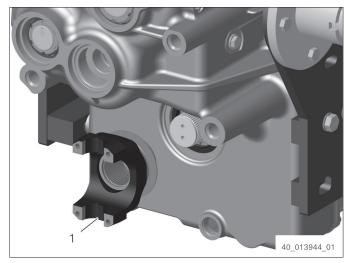


Fig. 90

6. Pull off yoke (1).

7. Remove shaft sealing ring (1) from housing hole.

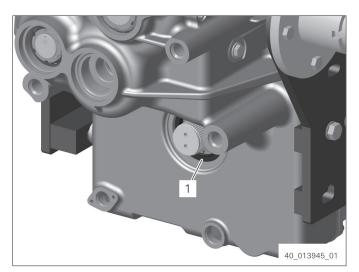


Fig. 91

### Installing the yoke on the output side

- 8. Remove locking plate (1).
- 9. Loosen hexagon screws (2).
- Remove washer (3). 10.

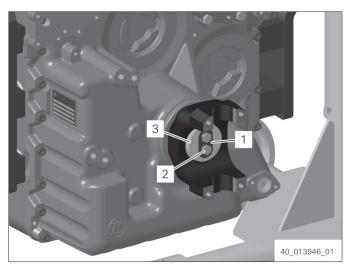


Fig. 92

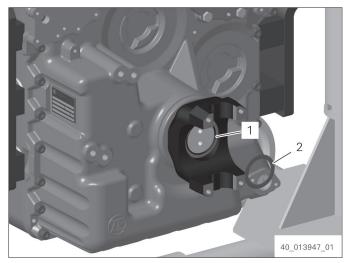


Fig. 93

11.

Remove washer (2).

Remove O-ring (1). 12.

13. Pull off yoke (1).

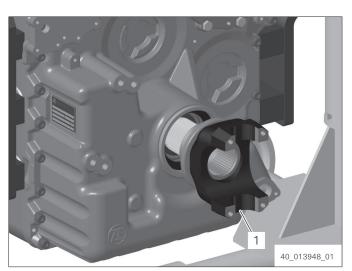


Fig. 94

14. Remove shaft sealing ring (1) from housing hole.

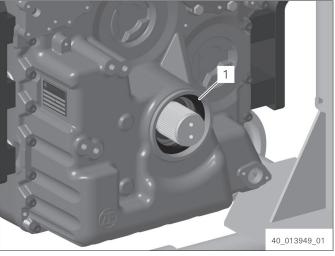


Fig. 95

### Removing and dismantling clutches and output

### Removing bearing cover and the covers

- 5870.204.069 Thread insert
- 5870.650.014 Extracting device
- 5870.204.005 Hexagon screw

- 1. Loosen hexagon screws.
- Pull bearing cover K1/KV (1) with 5870.204.069 [Thread insert] and 5870.650.014 [Extracting device] out of cover hole.

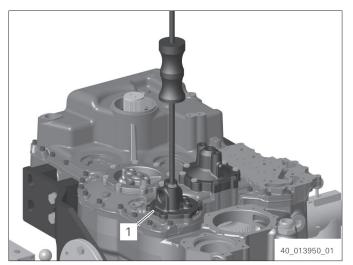


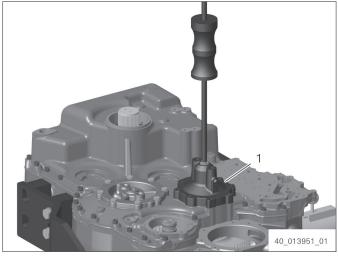
Fig. 96

- 3. Pull bearing outer ring (1) out of bearing cover.
- 4. Remove shim and ring.



Fig. 97

- 5. Loosen hexagon screws.
- Pull off cover K2/KR (1) using 5870.204.069 [Thread insert] and 5870.650.014 [Extracting device].
- 7. Remove shim and O-ring.



- 8. Loosen hexagon screws.
- 9. Evenly pull cover K3/K4 (1) out of cover hole with two 5870.204.005 [Hexagon screw].

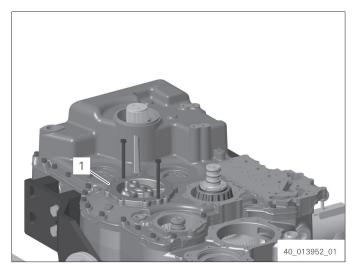


Fig. 99

- 10. Pull off bearing inner ring from cover using three-armed extractor.
- 11. Remove spacer washer.



Fig. 100

#### Removing and dismantling the cover

- 5870.281.061 Load-lifting equipment
- 5870.204.005 Hexagon screw

- 1. Loosen cap screws.
- Mount 5870.281.061 [Load-lifting equipment] (3) to cover (1). Turn hexagon screw (4) into output shaft until contact is obtained.
- 3. Turn two 5870.204.005 [Hexagon screw ] (2) into the cover until contact is obtained.
- 4. Separate the cover evenly from the housing by means of two 5870.204.005 [Hexagon screw ] and 5870.281.061 [Load-lifting equipment].
- 5. Lift off cover using 5870.281.061 [Load-lifting equipment] and a crane.
- 6. Loosen the adapter (1).

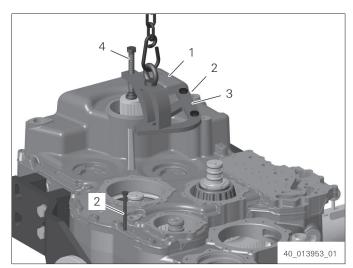


Fig. 101

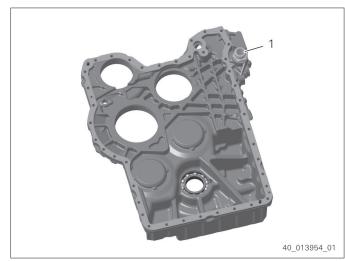


Fig. 102

- 7. Remove retaining ring (1).
- 8. Pull ball bearing (2) out of the cover hole.

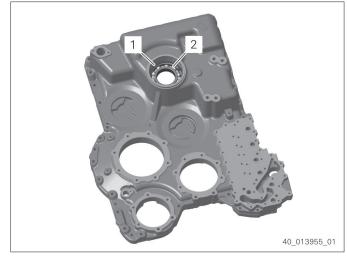


Fig. 103

### Removing suction tube

- 1. Loosen cap screws (2).
- 2. Remove suction tube (1).

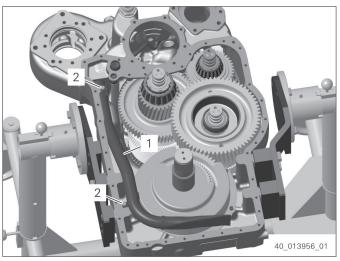


Fig. 104

#### Removing output shaft and output gear

- 5870.100.054 Stop washer
- 5870.204.002 Eyebolt
- 1. Remove shim (1).

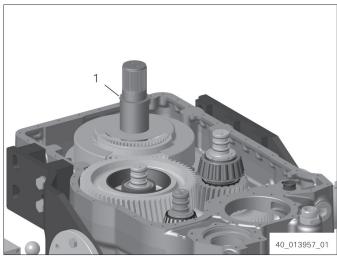


Fig. 105

2. Force output shaft (1) out of gear by means of a plastic hammer.

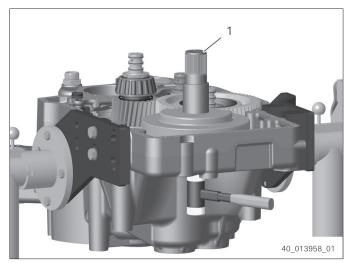


Fig. 106

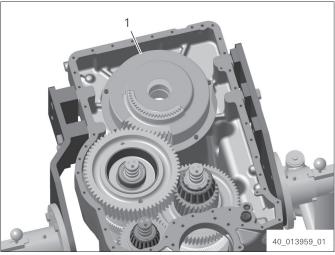


Fig. 107

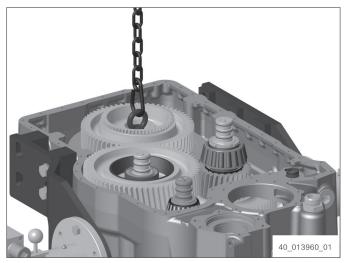


Fig. 108

- 3. Loosen cap screws.
- 4. Remove cover sheet (1).

# 5. **CAUTION**

Risk of crushing due to moving load. Slight to moderate injury possible.

- $\Rightarrow$  Move load slowly and carefully.
- $\Rightarrow$  Do not reach into danger area.

Use 5870.100.054 [Stop washer], 5870.204.002 [Eyebolt] and crane to lift gear out of housing.

 Pull bearing inner ring from gear using a three-armed extractor and 5870.100.054 [Stop washer].



Fig. 109

7. Remove cover sheet (1).

housing hole.

8.

Remove cylindrical roller bearing (1) from

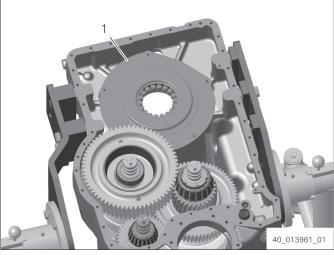


Fig. 110

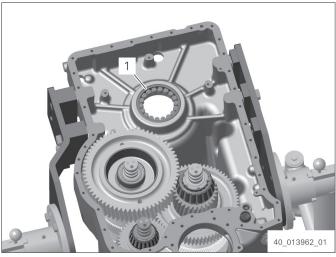


Fig. 111

### Removing clutches

Special tools:

• 5870.204.002 Eyebolt

### 1. **CAUTION**

Risk of crushing due to moving load.Slight to moderate injury possible.⇒ Move load slowly and carefully.

 $\Rightarrow$  Do not reach into danger area.

Slightly lift clutch KR/K2 (2) and move in direction of arrow.

- 2. Remove clutch K3/K4 (1) out of housing using 5870.204.002 [Eyebolt] and a crane.
- 3. Remove clutch KR/K2 (2) out of housing using 5870.204.002 [Eyebolt] and a crane.
- 4. Remove clutch KV/K1 (3) out of housing using 5870.204.002 [Eyebolt] and a crane.
- 5. Figure shows the disassembled clutches.
  - 1 = Clutch K1
  - 2 = Clutch KV
  - 3 = Clutch K2
  - 4 = Clutch KR
  - 5 = Clutch K3
  - 6 = Clutch K4

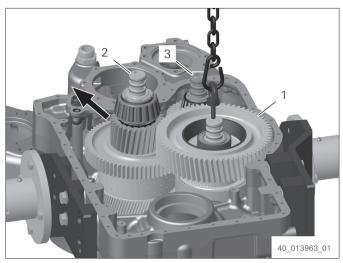


Fig. 112

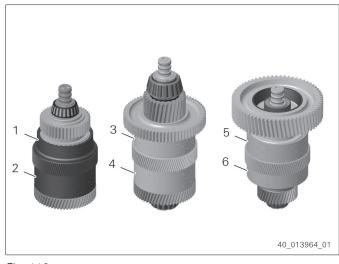


Fig. 113

### Dismantling clutch K3/K4

- 5870.350.000 Assembly truck
- 5870.654.033 Assembly fixture
- AA02.778.672 Rapid grip
- 5873.002.001 Basic tool
- 5870.401.118 Groove nut wrench

- 5870.401.115 Groove nut wrench
- 5873.002.033 Gripping device
- 5870.345.072 Assembly fixture
- Fasten clutch K3/K4 to 5870.350.000 [Assembly truck] by means of 5870.654.033 [Assembly fixture].



Fig. 114

2. Remove R-rings (1).

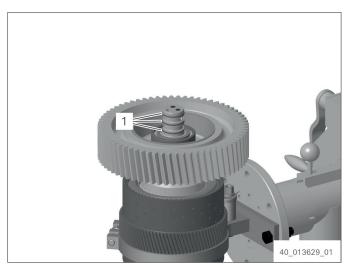


Fig. 115

### Dismantling clutch K3

3. Pull roller bearing from disk carrier using a three-armed extractor.

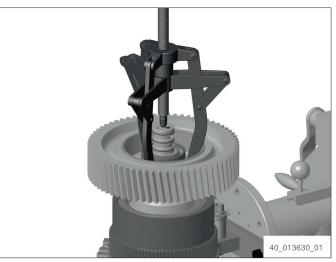


Fig. 116

- 4. Remove spur gear (1).
- 5. Remove bearing outer ring (2) from spur gear.

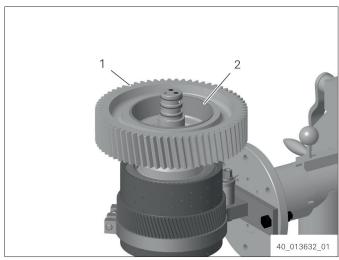


Fig. 117

Fig. 118

6. Pull off bearing inner ring with AA02.778.672 [Rapid grip] and 5873.002.001 [Basic tool].

- 7. Remove snap ring (1).
- 8. Remove end shim (2) from disk carrier.
- 9. Remove disk package (3).

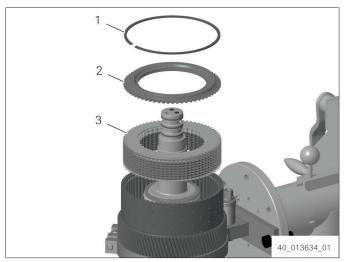


Fig. 119

### Dismantling clutch K4

- 10. Turn disk carrier by 90°.
- Loosen slotted nut with
   5870.401.118 [Groove nut wrench] and
   5870.401.115 [Groove nut wrench].

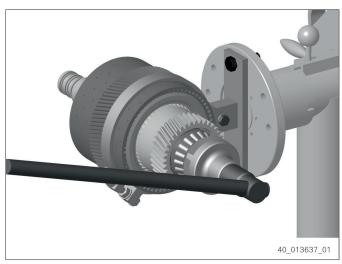


Fig. 120

- 12. Turn disk carrier by 90°.
- Pull helical gear, bearing inner ring and taper roller bearing from disk carrier using the three-armed extractor.
- 14. Remove bearing outer rings from helical gear.



Fig. 121

15. Remove washer.

17.

18.

19.

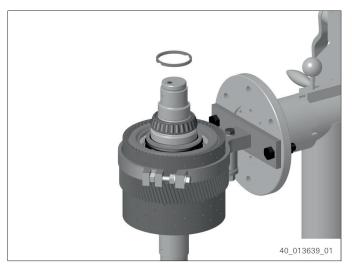


Fig. 122

 Pull off bearing inner ring with 5873.002.033 [Gripping device] and 5873.002.001 [Basic tool].

Remove snap ring (1).

Remove disk package (3).

Remove end shim (2) from disk carrier.

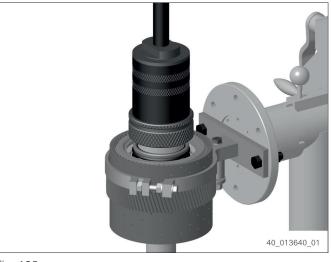


Fig. 123

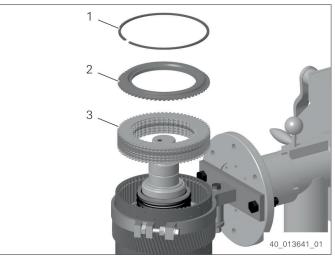


Fig. 124

- Press guide ring downwards with 5870.345.072 [Assembly fixture] and handoperated press and hold it there.
- 21. Remove snap ring.
- 22. Release hand-operated press.
- 23. Remove guide ring, compression spring and intermediate washer.
- 24. Turn disk carrier by 180°.
- 25. Press guide ring downwards with 5870.345.072 [Assembly fixture] and hand-operated press and hold it there.
- 26. Remove snap ring.
- 27. Release hand-operated press.
- 28. Remove guide ring, compression spring and intermediate washer.
- 29. Press both pistons out of disk carrier using compressed air.

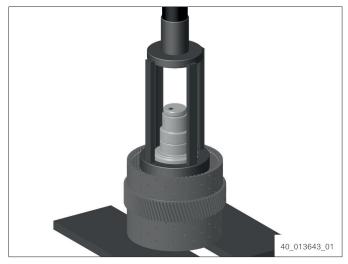


Fig. 125



Fig. 126

#### Dismantling clutch KR/K2

- 5870.350.000 Assembly truck
- 5870.654.033 Assembly fixture
- AA02.769.745 Slotted nut wrench
- 5873.012.018 Rapid grip
- 5873.002.001 Basic tool

- 5873.012.019 Rapid grip
- 5873.002.000 Basic tool
- 5870.401.099 Groove nut wrench
- 5873.002.044 Gripping device
- 5870.654.045 Assembly fixture
- 5873.012.013 Rapid grip
- 5870.345.072 Assembly fixture
- Fasten clutch KR/K2 to
   5870.350.000 [Assembly truck] using
   5870.654.033 [Assembly fixture].

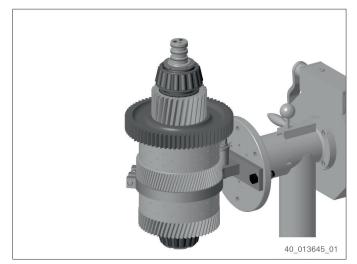


Fig. 127

2. Remove R-rings (1).

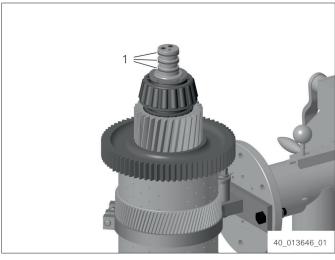


Fig. 128

#### Dismantling clutch K2

- 3. Turn disk carrier by 90°.
- Loosen slotted nut with AA02.769.745 [Slotted nut wrench].

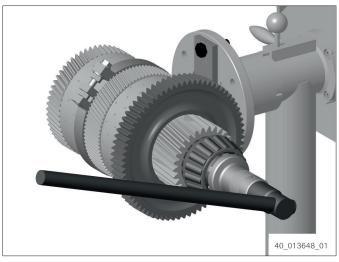


Fig. 129

- 5. Turn disk carrier by 90°.
- Pull off bearing inner ring with 5873.012.018 [Rapid grip] and 5873.002.001 [Basic tool].



Fig. 130

7. Pull both gears and bearing inner ring from disk carrier using two-armed extractor.



 Pull off bearing inner ring with 5873.012.019 [Rapid grip] and 5873.002.000 [Basic tool].

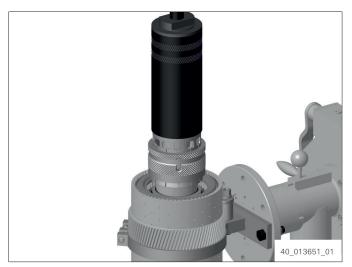


Fig. 132

- 9. Remove snap ring (1).
- 10. Remove end shim (2) from disk carrier.
- 11. Remove disk package (3).

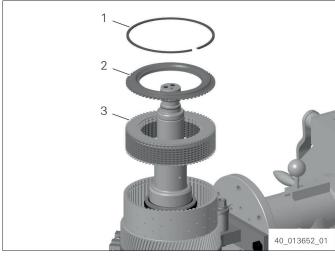


Fig. 133

Dismantling KR clutch

- 12. Turn disk carrier by 90°.
- Loosen slotted nut with
   5870.401.099 [Groove nut wrench].

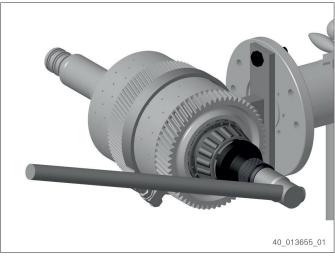


Fig. 134

17.

Remove ring.

- 14. Turn disk carrier by 90°.
- Pull off bearing inner ring with 5873.002.044 [Gripping device] and 5873.002.001 [Basic tool].

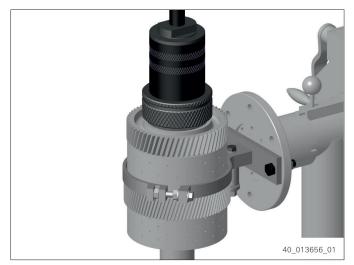


Fig. 135

 Pull spur gear and bearing inner ring from disk carrier using 5870.654.045 [Assembly fixture] and three-armed puller.



Fig. 136



Fig. 137

- 18. Remove snap ring (1).
- 19. Remove end shim (2) from disk carrier.
- 20. Remove disk package (3).

21. Pull off bearing inner ring with

5873.012.013 [Rapid grip] and 5873.002.001 [Basic tool].

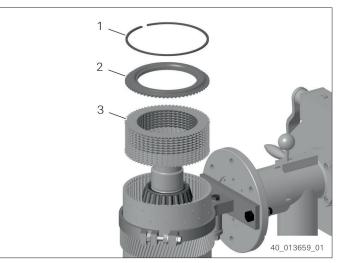
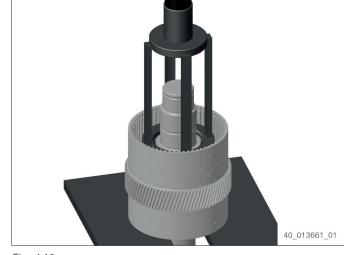


Fig. 138



Fig. 139

- 22. Press guide ring downwards with 5870.345.072 [Assembly fixture] and handoperated press and hold it there.
- 23. Remove snap ring.
- 24. Release hand-operated press.
- 25. Remove guide ring, compression spring and intermediate washer.
- Turn disk carrier by 180°. 26.
- 27. Press guide ring downwards with 5870.345.072 [Assembly fixture] and handoperated press and hold it there.





28. Remove snap ring.

- 29. Release hand-operated press.
- 30. Remove guide ring, compression spring and intermediate washer.
- 31. Press both pistons out of disk carrier using compressed air.



Fig. 141

#### Dismantling clutch KV/K1

- 5870.350.000 Assembly truck
- 5870.654.033 Assembly fixture
- 5870.401.118 Groove nut wrench
- 5870.401.115 Groove nut wrench
- 5873.001.023 Gripping device
- 5873.001.000 Basic tool
- 5870.345.036 Pry bar
- 5873.001.034 Gripping device
- 5870.654.045 Assembly fixture
- 5870.345.072 Assembly fixture

 Fasten clutch KV/K1 to 5870.350.000 [Assembly truck] using 5870.654.033 [Assembly fixture].

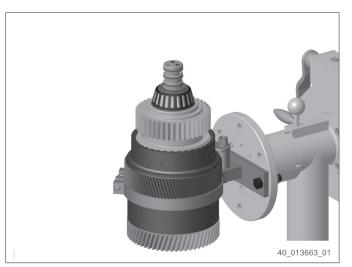


Fig. 142

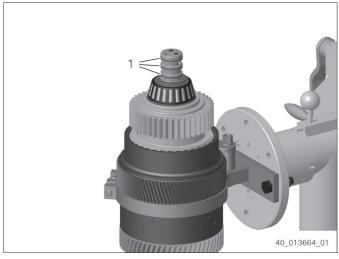


Fig. 143

Dismantling clutch K1

2.

3. Turn disk carrier by 90°.

Remove R-rings (1).

Loosen slotted nut with
 5870.401.118 [Groove nut wrench] and
 5870.401.115 [Groove nut wrench].

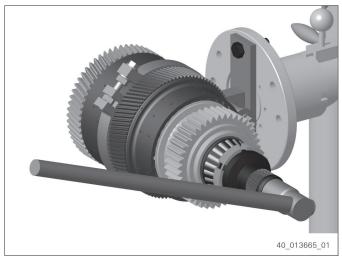


Fig. 144

- 5. Turn disk carrier by 90°.
- Pull off bearing inner ring with 5873.001.023 [Gripping device] and 5873.001.000 [Basic tool].

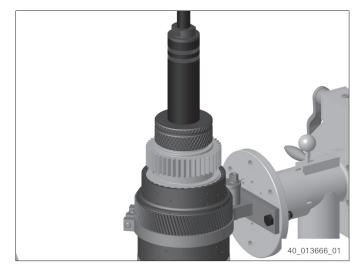


Fig. 145

Fig. 146

Fig. 147

7. Remove washer.

8. Pull gear and parts of the angular ball bearing from disk carrier using the three-armed extractor.

- 9. Figure shows single parts of gear bearing.
  - 1 = angular ball bearing
  - 2 = Snap ring
  - 3 = gear

11.

12.

13.

The angular ball bearing is only available as complete unit.

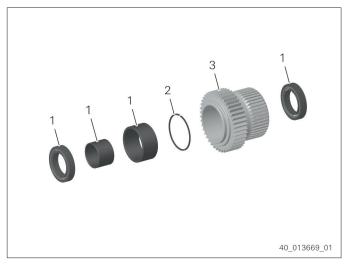


Fig. 148

10. Remove intermediate ring of angular ball bearing.

Remove snap ring (1).

Remove disk package (3).

Remove end shim (2) from disk carrier.

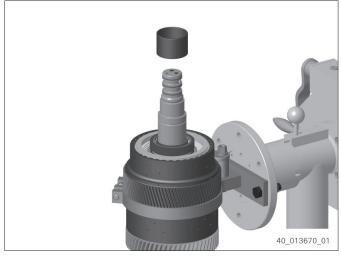


Fig. 149

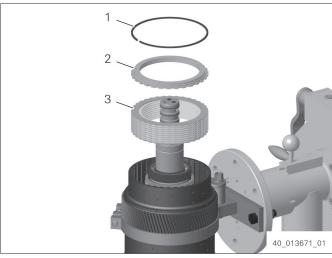


Fig. 150

- 14. Use 5870.345.036 [Pry bar] to pull the lower ball bearing of the angular ball bearing from the disk carrier and remove releasing balls.
  - $\rightarrow$  The ball bearing is destroyed.

The angular ball bearing is only available as complete unit.



Fig. 151

#### Dismantling clutch KV

- 15. Turn disk carrier by 90°.
- Loosen slotted nut with
   5870.401.118 [Groove nut wrench] and
   5870.401.115 [Groove nut wrench].

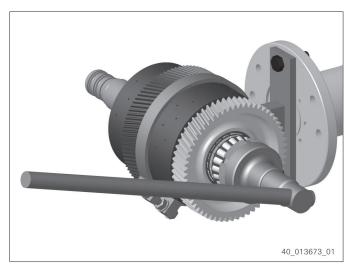
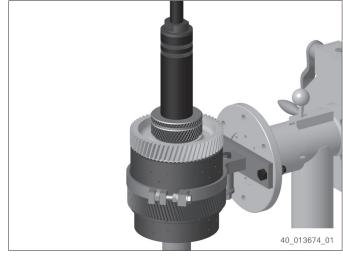


Fig. 152

- 17. Turn disk carrier by 90°.
- Pull off bearing inner ring with 5873.001.034 [Gripping device] and 5873.001.000 [Basic tool].



- Pull spur gear and bearing inner ring from disk carrier using 5870.654.045 [Assembly fixture] and three-armed puller.
- 20. Remove bearing outer rings from spur gear.

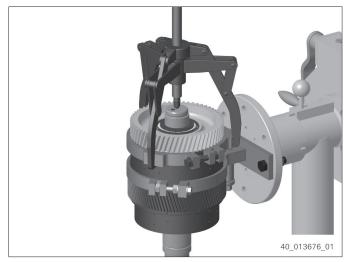


Fig. 154

21. Remove ring.

22.

23.

24.

Remove snap ring (1).

Remove disk package (3).

Remove end shim (2) from disk carrier.

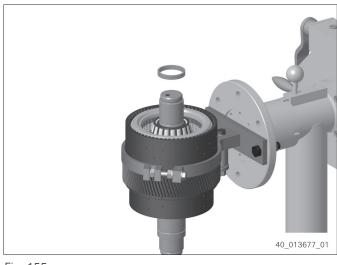
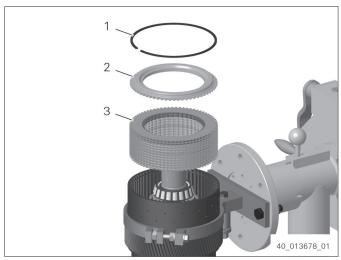
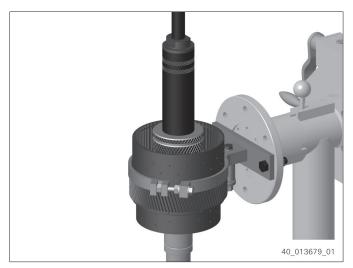


Fig. 155



 Pull off bearing inner ring with 5873.001.034 [Gripping device] and 5873.001.000 [Basic tool].





- Press guide ring downwards with 5870.345.072 [Assembly fixture] and handoperated press and hold it there.
- 27. Remove snap ring.
- 28. Release hand-operated press.
- 29. Remove guide ring, compression spring and intermediate washer.
- 30. Turn disk carrier by 180°.
- Press guide ring downwards with
   5870.345.072 [Assembly fixture] and handoperated press and hold it there.
- 32. Remove snap ring.
- 33. Release hand-operated press.
- 34. Remove guide ring, compression spring and intermediate washer.

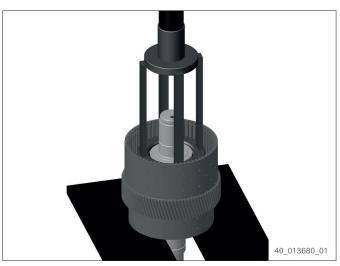


Fig. 158

35. Press both pistons out of disk carrier using compressed air.



Fig. 159

#### Disassembling the housing

- Pull bearing outer rings out of housing holes. Figure shows the positions of the bearing outer rings.
  - 1 = clutch KV/K1
  - 2 = clutch K3/K4
  - 3 = clutch KR/K2

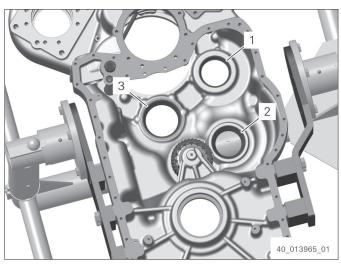
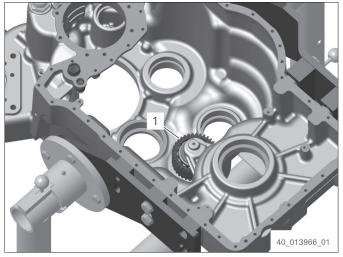


Fig. 160





2. Remove gear (1) with both tapered roller bearings (layshaft gear).

3. Loosen the adapter (1).

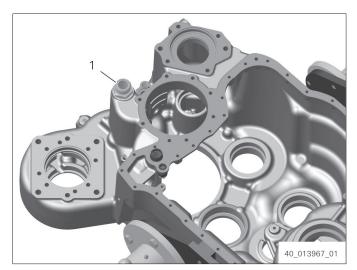


Fig. 162

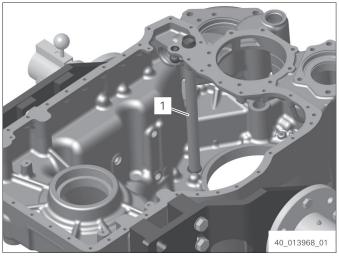


Fig. 163

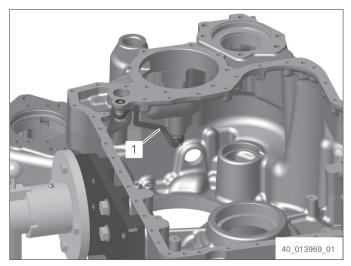


Fig. 164

4. Remove tube (1).

5. Loosen hollow screws and tube.

### Assembling housing

- 1. Insert sealing rings between tube (2) and housing.
- 2. Push sealing rings onto the hollow screws.
- Screw in the hollow screws with sealing ring (1) and tighten them. Tightening torque: 45 Nm

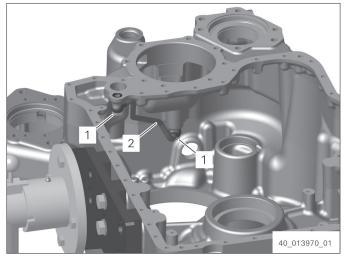


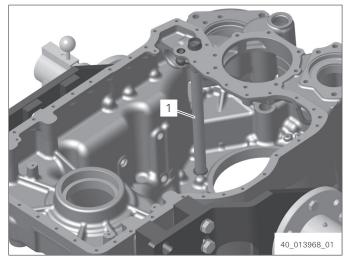
Fig. 165

- 4. Grease O-rings.
- 5. Insert O-rings (1) into annular grooves of the tube.



Fig. 166

6. Insert tube (1) into the housing.



Screw in the adapter with O-ring (1) and tighten.
 Tightening torque: 117 Nm

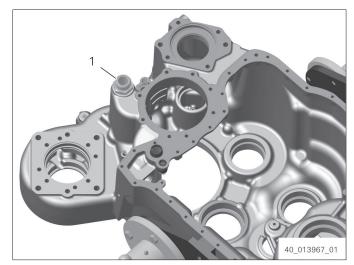


Fig. 168

8. Insert ring and both tapered roller bearings into gear (layshaft gear).

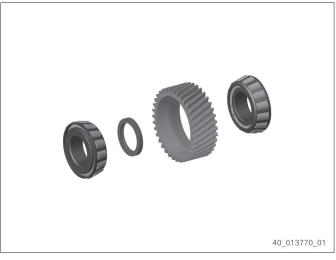
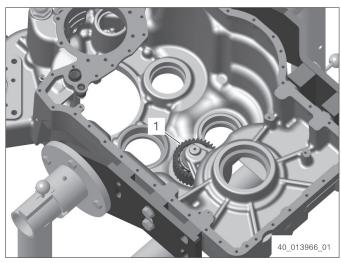


Fig. 169





Insert gear (1) into the housing.
 Countershaft cannot be inserted before installation of the clutches.

- Insert bearing outer rings in housing holes until contact is obtained.
   Figure shows the positions of the bearing outer rings.
  - 1 = clutch KV/K1
  - 2 = clutch K3/K4
  - 3 = clutch KR/K2

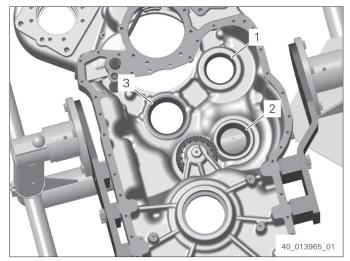


Fig. 171

### Assembling and installing clutches and output

#### Assembling clutch KV/K1

- 5870.350.000 Assembly truck
- 5870.654.033 Assembly fixture
- 5870.320.014 Assembly fixture
- 5870.320.018 Inserting tool
- 5870.320.019 Press-in mandrel
- 5870.345.072 Assembly fixture
- 5870.401.118 Groove nut wrench
- 5870.401.115 Groove nut wrench
- Fasten disk carrier to 5870.350.000 [Assembly truck] using 5870.654.033 [Assembly fixture].

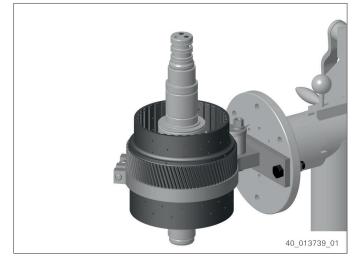


Fig. 172

4.

Assembling disk carrier

- 2. Turn disk carrier by 180.
- Insert sealing plug (1) into hole with 5870.320.014 [Assembly fixture] and 5870.320.018 [Inserting tool].

Flush-mount valve (1) using

5870.320.019 [Press-in mandrel]. Insert valve with the chamfered side facing downwards.

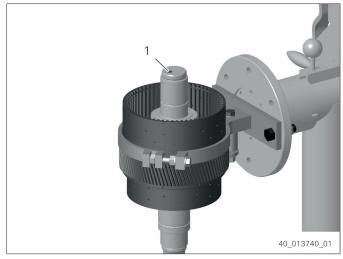
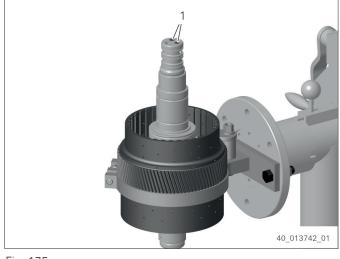


Fig. 173

Fig. 174

- 5. Turn disk carrier by 180.
- Insert sealing plugs (1) into holes using 5870.320.014 [Assembly fixture] and 5870.320.018 [Inserting tool].





Flush-mount valve (1) using
 5870.320.019 [Press-in mandrel]. Insert valve with the chamfered side facing downwards.

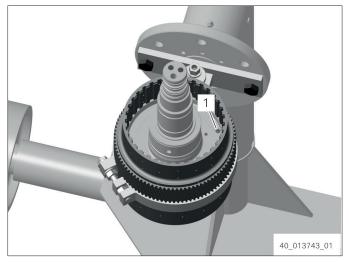


Fig. 176

8. Apply oil to O-rings (1) and insert them twistfree into annular grooves of the piston.

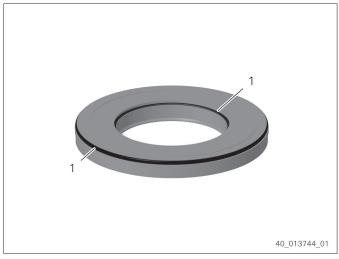


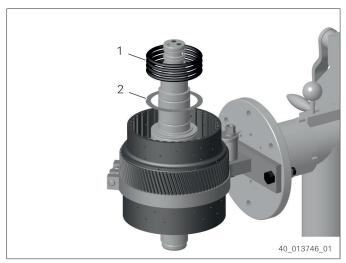
Fig. 177

- 9. Oil O-rings and piston bearing surfaces.
- 10. Insert piston (1) into the disk carrier until contact is obtained.



Fig. 178

11. Slide on intermediate washer (2) and compression spring (1).



- 12. Place guide ring (2) onto compression spring with chamfer facing upwards.
- 13. Slide on snap ring (1).



Fig. 180

- Press guide ring downwards with 5870.345.072 [Assembly fixture] and handoperated press and hold it there.
- 15. Insert snap ring into annular groove of disk carrier.
- 16. Release hand-operated press.



Fig. 181

- 17. Turn disk carrier by 180.
- 18. Apply oil to O-rings and insert them twist-free into annular grooves of the piston.
- 19. Oil O-rings and piston bearing surfaces.
- 20. Insert piston into the disk carrier until contact is obtained.
- 21. Slide on intermediate washer and compression spring.
- 22. Place guide ring onto compression spring with chamfer facing upwards.
- 23. Slide on snap ring.
- 24. Press guide ring downwards with 5870.345.072 [Assembly fixture] and hand-operated press and hold it there.
- 25. Insert snap ring into annular groove of disk carrier.
- 26. Release hand-operated press.
- Fasten disk carrier to 5870.350.000 [Assembly truck] using 5870.654.033 [Assembly fixture].

#### Assembling clutch KV

28. To ensure a correct measuring result, install single parts without oil for the time being.

Insert outer disks and inner disks. Insert first outer disk with the uncoated side facing the piston.

Insert last outer disk with the uncoated side facing the end shim.

For the arrangement refer to the current spare parts list.

Thickness of the two optional inner disks must not differ by more than 0.7 mm.

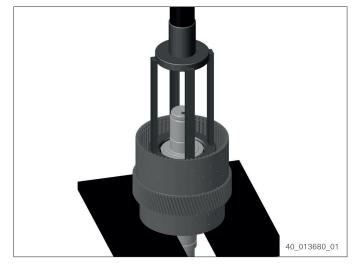




Fig. 183

- 29. Insert end shim (2).
- 30. Insert snap ring e. g. 2.60 mm (1).

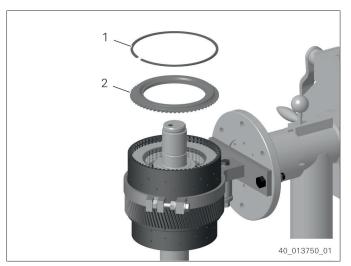


Fig. 184

- 31. Position dial gauge on the end shim.
- 32. Push end shim downwards with 100 N and set dial gauge to zero.
- 33. Lift end shim until contact with snap ring is obtained and check the necessary Disk clearance 2.8 mm to 3.0 mm.
  If the disk clearance is too small, insert thinner inner disks or (and) a thinner snap ring.
  If disk clearance is too big, install thicker

inner disks or (and) and a thicker snap ring.

Thickness of the two optional inner disks must not differ by more than 0.7 mm.

Fig. 185

34. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.



Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces.

Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

- Heat bearing inner ring.
- 35. Slide on bearing inner ring until contact is obtained.



Fig. 186

- 36. Let bearing inner ring cool down.
- 37. Adjust bearing inner ring.
- 38. Slide on ring.

40.



Fig. 187

39. Insert bearing outer rings into spur gear until contact is obtained.

Slide spur gear (1) onto shaft until contact is obtained. Insert spur gear into disk package

by short mutual rotary motions.

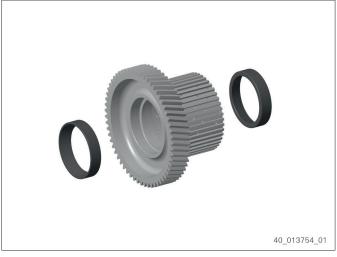
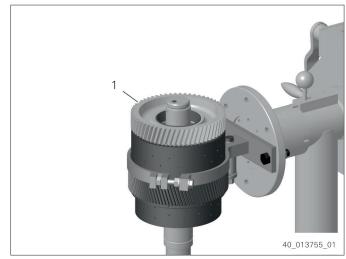


Fig. 188



41. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

### 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat bearing inner ring.

- 42. Slide on bearing inner ring until contact is obtained.
- 43. Let bearing inner ring cool down.
- 44. Adjust bearing inner ring.
- 45. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

#### 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat bearing inner ring.

- 46. Slide on bearing inner ring until contact is obtained.
- 47. Let bearing inner ring cool down.
- 48. Adjust bearing inner ring.

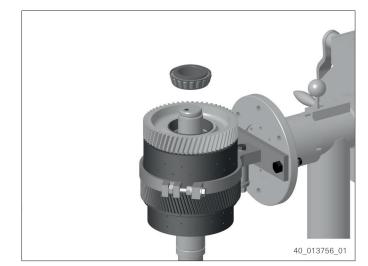


Fig. 190



- 49. Turn disk carrier by 90.
- 50. Use 5870.401.118 [Groove nut wrench] and 5870.401.115 [Groove nut wrench] to tighten the slotted nut. Tightening torque: **550 Nm**

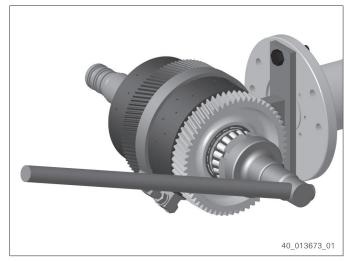


Fig. 192

#### Assembling clutch K1

- 51. Turn disk carrier by 90.
- 52. To ensure a correct measuring result, install single parts without oil for the time being.

Insert outer disks and inner disks. Insert first outer disk with the uncoated side facing the piston.

Insert last outer disk with the uncoated side facing the end shim.

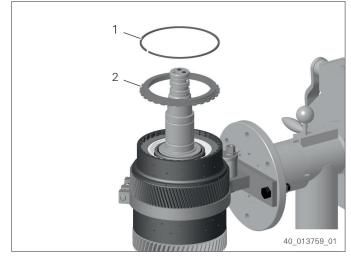
For the arrangement refer to the current spare parts list.

Thickness of the two optional inner disks must not differ by more than 0.7 mm.

- 53. Insert end shim (2).
- 54. Insert snap ring e. g. 2.30 mm (1).



Fig. 193



- 55. Position dial gauge on the end shim.
- 56. Push end shim downwards with 100 N and set dial gauge to zero.
- 57. Lift end shim until contact with snap ring is obtained and check the necessary Disk clearance 2.2 mm to 2.4 mm.
  If the disk clearance is too small, insert thinner inner disks or (and) a thinner snap ring.
  If disk clearance is too big, install thicker

inner disks or (and) and a thicker snap ring.

Thickness of the two optional inner disks must not differ by more than 0.7 mm.

58. The angular ball bearing has not yet been installed in the gear.

Align disk package with the gear (1). Insert gear into the disk package by short mutual rotary motions.

59. Remove gear.

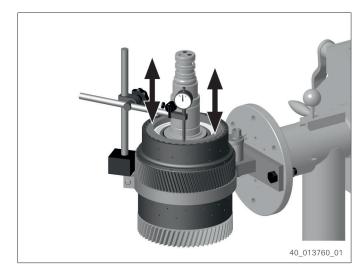


Fig. 195

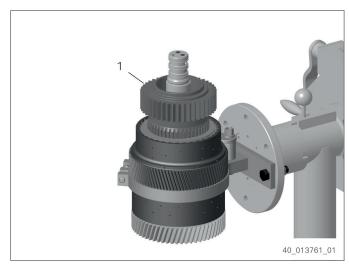


Fig. 196

Fig. 197

- 60. Figure shows single parts of gear bearing.
  - 1 = Angular ball bearing
  - 2 = Snap ring
  - 3 = Gear

The angular ball bearing is only available as complete unit.

61. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

#### 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat the ball bearing inner ring.

- 62. Slide on the ball bearing with the lubricating groove facing upwards until contact is obtained.
- 63. Allow the ball bearing to cool down.
- 64. Adjust bearing inner ring.
- 65. Slide on intermediate ring.

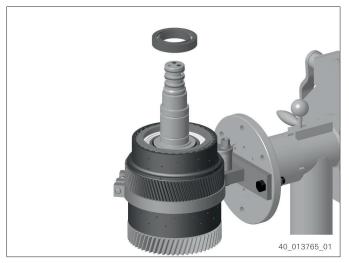
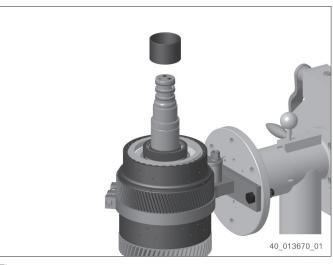
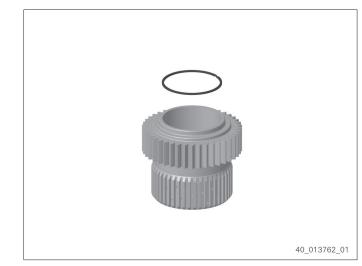


Fig. 198



66. Insert snap ring into annular groove of the gear.





67. Insert intermediate ring with the offset front face facing the snap ring.

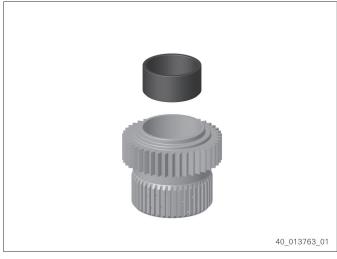


Fig. 201

68. Insert ball bearing with the lubricating groove facing downwards until contact is obtained.

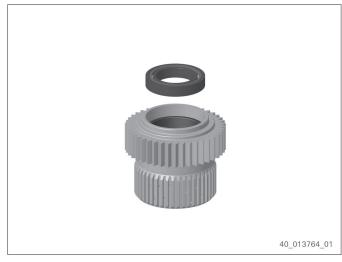


Fig. 202

69. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

### 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat gear and ball bearing.

- 70. Slide gear (1) onto shaft until contact is obtained. Insert gear into disk package.
- 71. Allow the ball bearing to cool down.
- 72. Adjust bearing inner ring.
- 73. Slide on shim.

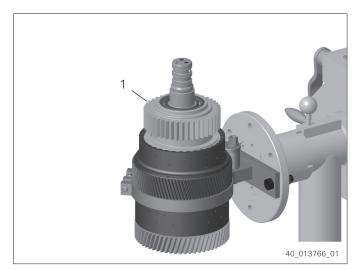
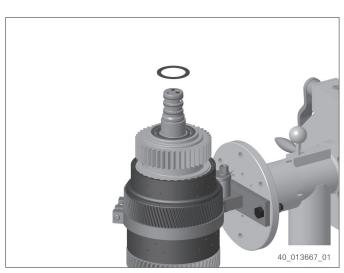


Fig. 203



74. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

#### 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat bearing inner ring.

- 75. Slide on bearing inner ring until contact is obtained.
- 76. Let bearing inner ring cool down.
- 77. Adjust bearing inner ring.
- 78. Turn disk carrier by 90.
- 79. Use 5870.401.118 [Groove nut wrench] and 5870.401.115 [Groove nut wrench] to tighten the slotted nut.Tightening torque: 550 Nm

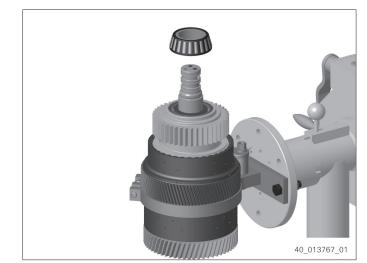
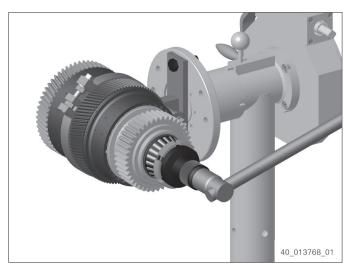


Fig. 205



- 80. Check function of the clutches by applying compressed air.
  - → Closing and opening of the clutch is clearly audible.

If closing and opening is not audible, disassemble and check clutch.

Grease annular grooves of shaft.

Insert R-rings (1).



Fig. 207

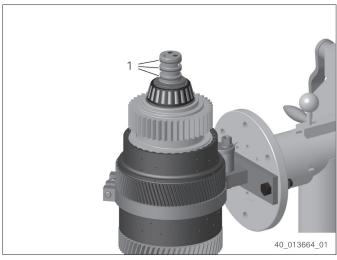


Fig. 208

Assembling clutch KR/K2

#### Special tools:

81.

82.

- 5870.350.000 Assembly truck
- 5870.654.033 Assembly fixture
- 5870.320.014 Assembly fixture
- 5870.320.018 Inserting tool
- 5870.320.019 Press-in mandrel
- 5870.345.072 Assembly fixture
- 5870.401.099 Groove nut wrench
- AA02.769.745 Slotted nut wrench

 Fasten disk carrier to 5870.350.000 [Assembly truck] using 5870.654.033 [Assembly fixture].

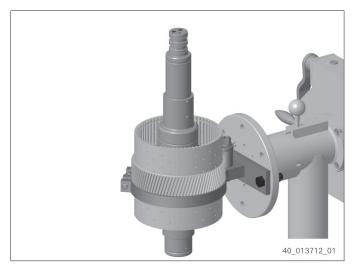


Fig. 209

#### Assembling disk carrier

- 2. Turn disk carrier by 180.
- Insert sealing plug (1) into hole with 5870.320.014 [Assembly fixture] and 5870.320.018 [Inserting tool].

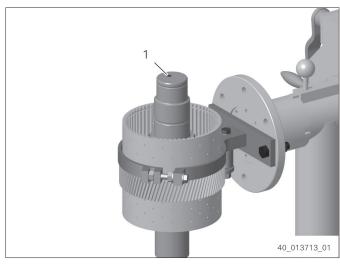
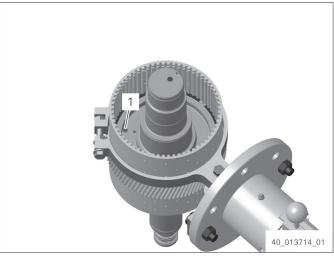


Fig. 210

Flush-mount valve (1) using
 5870.320.019 [Press-in mandrel]. Insert valve with the chamfered side facing downwards.



5. Turn disk carrier by 180.

8.

 Insert sealing plugs (1) into holes using 5870.320.014 [Assembly fixture] and 5870.320.018 [Inserting tool].

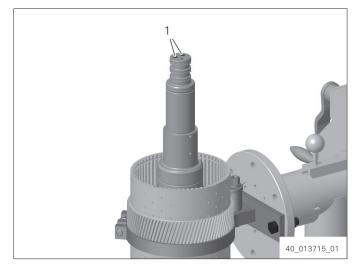


Fig. 212

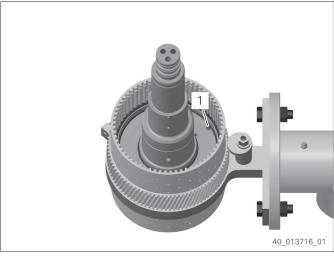


Fig. 213

40\_013687\_01



Flush-mount valve (1) using
 5870.320.019 [Press-in mandrel]. Insert valve with the chamfered side facing downwards.

Apply oil to O-rings (1) and insert them twist-

free into annular grooves of the piston.

11.

- 9. Oil O-rings and piston bearing surfaces.
- 10. Insert piston (1) into the disk carrier until contact is obtained.

Slide on intermediate washer (2) and

compression spring (1).

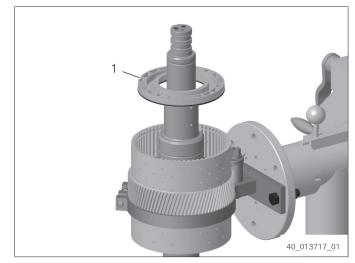


Fig. 215

Fig. 216

- 12. Place guide ring (2) onto compression spring with chamfer facing upwards.
- 13. Slide on snap ring (1).

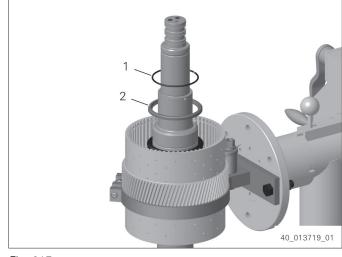
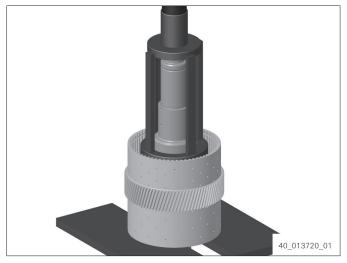


Fig. 217

- Press guide ring downwards with 5870.345.072 [Assembly fixture] and handoperated press and hold it there.
- 15. Insert snap ring into annular groove of disk carrier.
- 16. Release hand-operated press.



- 17. Turn disk carrier by 180.
- 18. Apply oil to O-rings and insert them twist-free into annular grooves of the piston.
- 19. Oil O-rings and piston bearing surfaces.
- 20. Insert piston into the disk carrier until contact is obtained.
- 21. Slide on intermediate washer and compression spring.
- 22. Place guide ring onto compression spring with chamfer facing upwards.
- 23. Slide on snap ring.
- 24. Press guide ring downwards with 5870.345.072 [Assembly fixture] and hand-operated press and hold it there.
- 25. Insert snap ring into annular groove of disk carrier.
- 26. Release hand-operated press.
- 27. Fasten disk carrier to5870.350.000 [Assembly truck] using5870.654.033 [Assembly fixture].

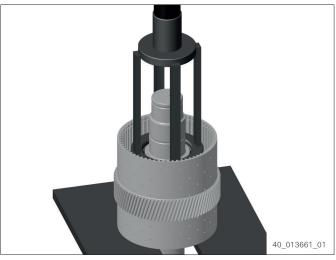


Fig. 219

#### Assembling clutch KR

28. To ensure a correct measuring result, install single parts without oil for the time being.

Insert outer disks and inner disks. Insert first outer disk with the uncoated side facing the piston.

Insert last outer disk with the uncoated side facing the end shim.

For the arrangement refer to the current spare parts list.

Thickness of the two optional inner disks must not differ by more than 0.7 mm.

- 29. Insert end shim (2).
- 30. Insert snap ring e. g. 2.60 mm (1).

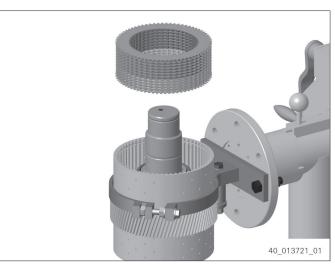


Fig. 220

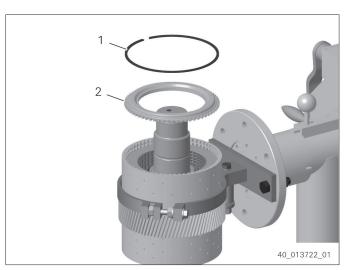
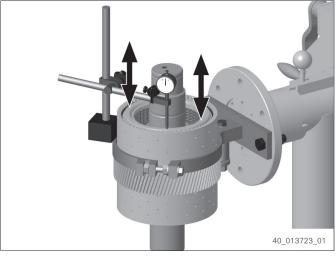


Fig. 221

- 31. Position dial gauge on the end shim.
- 32. Push end shim downwards with 100 N and set dial gauge to zero.
- 33. Lift end shim until contact with snap ring is obtained and check the necessary Disk clearance 2.8 mm to 3.0 mm.
  If the disk clearance is too small, insert thinner inner disks or (and) a thinner snap ring.

If disk clearance is too big, install thicker inner disks or (and) and a thicker snap ring.

Thickness of the two optional inner disks must not differ by more than 0.7 mm.





34. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

#### 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat bearing inner ring.

- 35. Slide on bearing inner ring until contact is obtained.
- 36. Let bearing inner ring cool down.
- 37. Adjust bearing inner ring.
- Slide spur gear (1) onto shaft until contact is obtained. Insert spur gear into disk package by short mutual rotary motions.

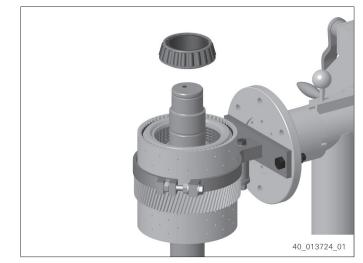
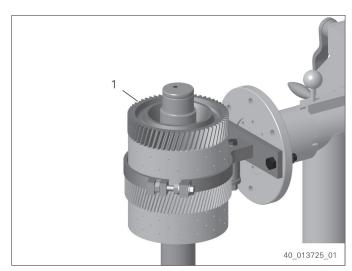


Fig. 223



39. Slide on ring with the recesses facing downwards.

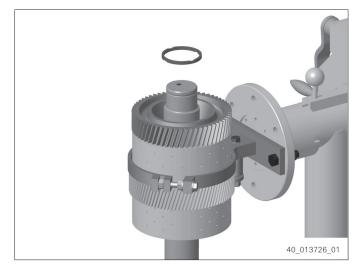


Fig. 225

40. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.



Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible.

 $\Rightarrow$  Wear protective gloves.

Heat bearing inner ring.

- 41. Slide on bearing inner ring until contact is obtained.
- 42. Let bearing inner ring cool down.
- 43. Adjust bearing inner ring.

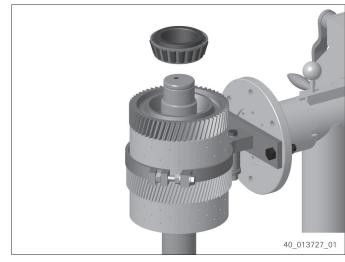


Fig. 226

44. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

#### 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat bearing inner ring.

- 45. Slide on bearing inner ring until contact is obtained.
- 46. Let bearing inner ring cool down.
- 47. Adjust bearing inner ring.
- 48. Turn disk carrier by 90.
- 49. Tighten slotted nut with 5870.401.099 [Groove nut wrench]. Tightening torque: **800 Nm**

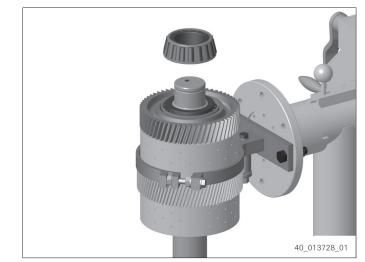


Fig. 227



#### Assembling clutch K2

- 50. Turn disk carrier by 90.
- 51. To ensure a correct measuring result, install single parts without oil for the time being.

Insert outer disks and inner disks. Insert first outer disk with the uncoated side facing the piston.

Insert last outer disk with the uncoated side facing the end shim.

For the arrangement refer to the current spare parts list.

Thickness of the two optional inner disks must not differ by more than 0.7 mm.

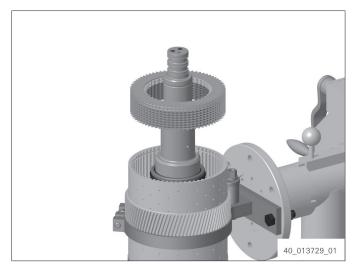


Fig. 229

- 52. Insert end shim (2).
- 53. Insert snap ring e. g. 2.60 mm (1).

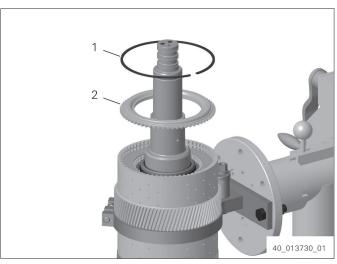
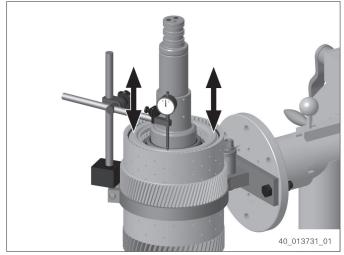


Fig. 230

- 54. Position dial gauge on the end shim.
- 55. Push end shim downwards with 100 N and set dial gauge to zero.
- 56. Lift end shim until contact with snap ring is obtained and check the necessary Disk clearance 2.2 mm to 2.4 mm.
  If the disk clearance is too small, insert thinner inner disks or (and) a thinner snap ring.

If disk clearance is too big, install thicker inner disks or (and) and a thicker snap ring.





Thickness of the two optional inner disks must not differ by more than 0.7 mm.

57. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

## 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat bearing inner ring.

- 58. Slide on bearing inner ring (1) until contact is obtained.
- 59. Let bearing inner ring cool down.
- 60. Adjust bearing inner ring.

# 61. **CAUTION**

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with cold surface. Slight to moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

## 62. **CAUTION**

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces.

Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves. Fig. 232

Fig. 233

Heat up the gear (3).

63. Carry out the following three work steps immediately one after the other.

Insert snap ring (2) into annular groove of the gear (1).

64. Insert gear (1) into gear (3).

Undercool gear (1).

67.

68.

# 65. **CAUTION**

Risk of crushing due to hydraulic tool.Slight to moderate injury possible.⇒ Do not reach into danger area.

Push snap ring (2) into annular groove and force gear (1) into gear (3), until snap ring engages audibly.

66. Slide gear (1) onto shaft until contact is obtained. Insert gear into the disk package by short mutual rotary motions.

Carry out the following two work steps

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot

Slide on bearing inner ring until contact is

immediately one after the other.

Slight or moderate injury possible.

 $\Rightarrow$  Wear protective gloves.

Heat bearing inner ring.

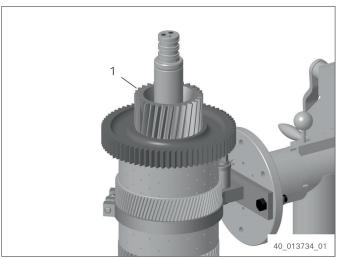


Fig. 234

Fig. 235

- 69. Let bearing inner ring cool down.
- 70. Adjust bearing inner ring.

surfaces.

obtained.

71. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

### 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat bearing inner ring.

- 72. Slide on bearing inner ring until contact is obtained.
- 73. Let bearing inner ring cool down.
- 74. Adjust bearing inner ring.
- 75. Turn disk carrier by 90.
- 76. Tighten slotted nut with AA02.769.745 [Slotted nut wrench]. Tightening torque: 800 Nm

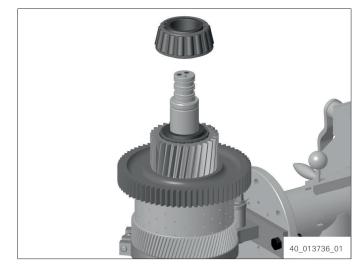
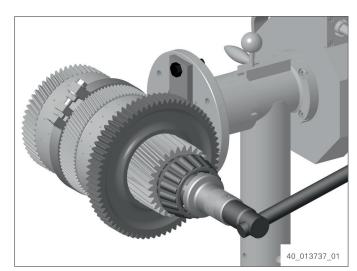


Fig. 236



- 77. Check function of the clutches by applying compressed air.
  - → Closing and opening of the clutch is clearly audible.

If closing and opening is not audible, disassemble and check clutch.

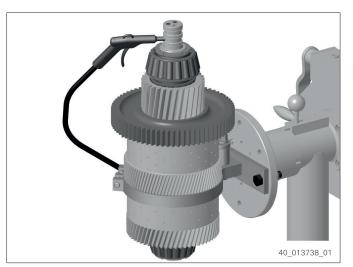


Fig. 238

- 78. Grease annular grooves of shaft.
- 79. Insert R-rings (1).

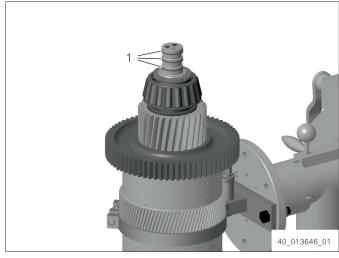


Fig. 239

#### Assembling clutch K3/K4

#### Special tools:

- 5870.350.000 Assembly truck
- 5870.654.033 Assembly fixture
- 5870.320.014 Assembly fixture
- 5870.320.018 Inserting tool
- 5870.320.019 Press-in mandrel
- 5870.345.072 Assembly fixture
- 5870.401.118 Groove nut wrench
- 5870.401.115 Groove nut wrench
- 5870.345.033 Assembly fixture
- AA00.317.255 Load ring

1. Fasten disk carrier to 5870.350.000 [Assembly truck] using 5870.654.033 [Assembly fixture].

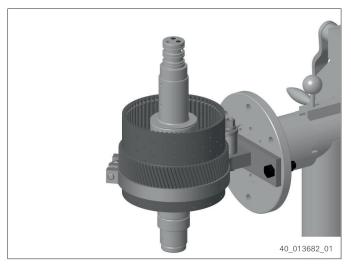


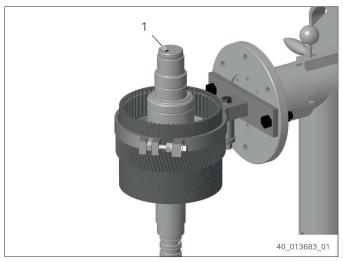
Fig. 240

#### Assembling disk carrier

- Turn disk carrier by 180. 2.
- 3. Insert sealing plug (1) into hole with 5870.320.014 [Assembly fixture] and 5870.320.018 [Inserting tool].

Flush-mount valve (1) using

4.









- 5. Turn disk carrier by 180.
- Insert sealing plugs (1) into holes using 5870.320.014 [Assembly fixture] and 5870.320.018 [Inserting tool].

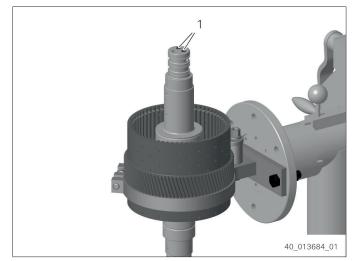


Fig. 243

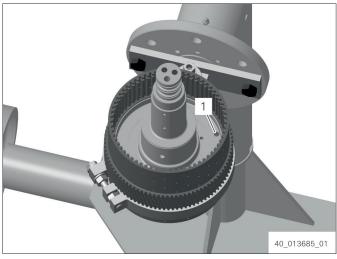


Fig. 244

40\_013687\_01



Flush-mount valve (1) using
 5870.320.019 [Press-in mandrel]. Insert valve with the chamfered side facing downwards.

8. Apply oil to O-rings (1) and insert them twistfree into annular grooves of the piston.

- 9. Oil O-rings and piston bearing surfaces.
- 10. Insert piston (1) into the disk carrier until contact is obtained.

Slide on intermediate washer (2) and

compression spring (1).

11.

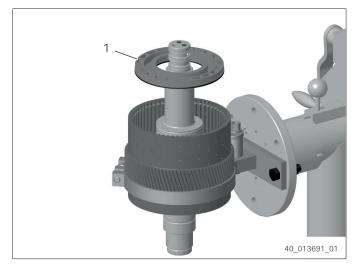


Fig. 246

Fig. 247

- 12. Place guide ring (2) onto compression spring with chamfer facing upwards.
- 13. Slide on snap ring (1).

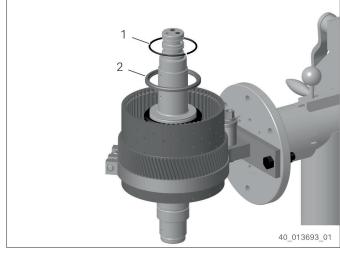


Fig. 248

- Press guide ring downwards with 5870.345.072 [Assembly fixture] and handoperated press and hold it there.
- 15. Insert snap ring into annular groove of disk carrier.
- 16. Release hand-operated press.



- 17. Turn disk carrier by 180.
- 18. Apply oil to O-rings and insert them twist-free into annular grooves of the piston.
- 19. Oil O-rings and piston bearing surfaces.
- 20. Insert piston into the disk carrier until contact is obtained.
- 21. Slide on intermediate washer and compression spring.
- 22. Place guide ring onto compression spring with chamfer facing upwards.
- 23. Slide on snap ring.
- 24. Press guide ring downwards with 5870.345.072 [Assembly fixture] and hand-operated press and hold it there.
- 25. Insert snap ring into annular groove of disk carrier.
- 26. Release hand-operated press.
- 27. Fasten disk carrier to5870.350.000 [Assembly truck] using5870.654.033 [Assembly fixture].



Fig. 250

#### Assembling clutch K4

28. To ensure a correct measuring result, install single parts without oil for the time being.

Insert outer disks and inner disks. Insert first outer disk with the uncoated side facing the piston. Insert last outer disk with the uncoated side

facing the end shim. For the arrangement refer to the current spare parts list.

Thickness of the two optional inner disks must not differ by more than 0.7 mm.

29. Insert end shim (2).

31.

32.

33.

ring.

30. Insert snap ring e. g. 2.60 mm (1).

Position dial gauge on the end shim.

set dial gauge to zero.

Push end shim downwards with 100 N and

Lift end shim until contact with snap ring is

obtained and check the necessary Disk

If the disk clearance is too small, insert thinner inner disks or (and) a thinner snap

If disk clearance is too big, install thicker inner disks or (and) and a thicker snap ring.

clearance 2.2 mm to 2.4 mm.

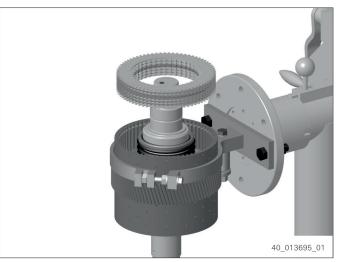


Fig. 251

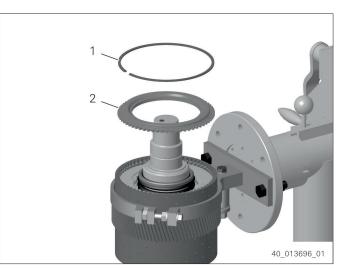


Fig. 252



Thickness of the two optional inner disks must not differ by more than 0.7 mm.

34. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

### 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat bearing inner ring.

- 35. Slide on bearing inner ring until contact is obtained.
- 36. Let bearing inner ring cool down.
- 37. Adjust bearing inner ring.
- 38. Slide on washer with recesses facing downwards.

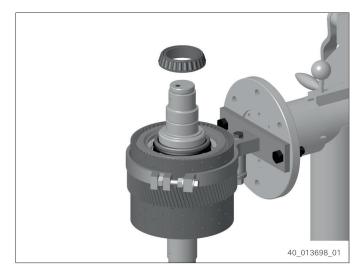
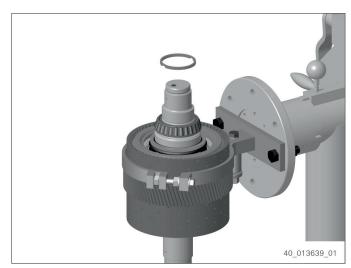


Fig. 254



 Insert bearing outer rings into helical gear until contact is obtained.

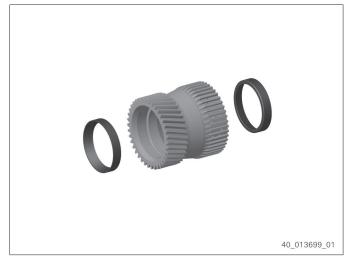
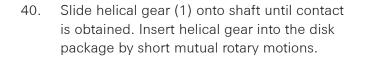


Fig. 256



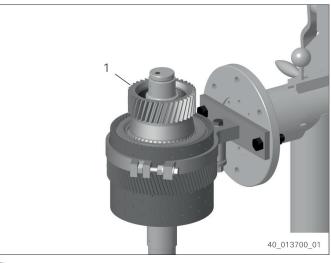


Fig. 257

41. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

# 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible.

 $\Rightarrow$  Wear protective gloves.

Heat bearing inner ring.

- 42. Slide on bearing inner ring until contact is obtained.
- 43. Let bearing inner ring cool down.





- 44. Adjust bearing inner ring.
- 45. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

#### 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat bearing inner ring.

- 46. Slide on bearing inner ring until contact is obtained.
- 47. Let bearing inner ring cool down.
- 48. Adjust bearing inner ring.
- 49. Turn disk carrier by 90.
- 50. Use 5870.401.118 [Groove nut wrench] and 5870.401.115 [Groove nut wrench] to tighten the slotted nut. Tightening torque: **550 Nm**

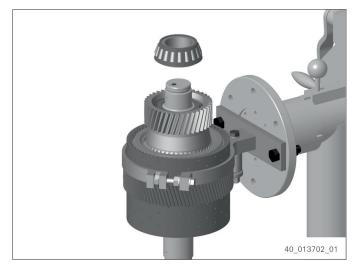
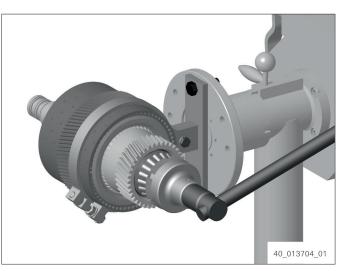


Fig. 259



#### Assembling clutch K3

- 51. Turn disk carrier by 90.
- 52. To ensure a correct measuring result, install single parts without oil for the time being.

Insert outer disks and inner disks. Insert first outer disk with the uncoated side facing the piston.

Insert last outer disk with the uncoated side facing the end shim.

For the arrangement refer to the current spare parts list.

Thickness of the two optional inner disks must not differ by more than 0.7 mm.

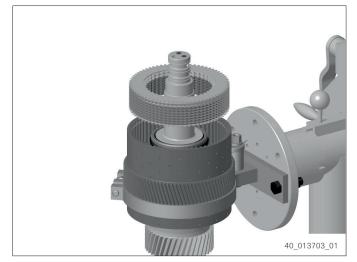


Fig. 261

- 53. Insert end shim (2).
- 54. Insert snap ring e. g. 2.60 mm (1).

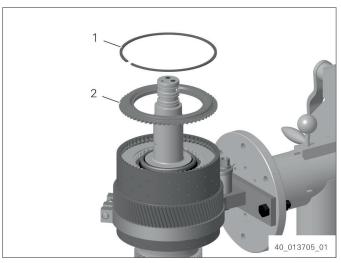


Fig. 262

- 55. Position dial gauge on the end shim.
- 56. Push end shim downwards with 100 N and set dial gauge to zero.
- 57. Lift end shim until contact with snap ring is obtained and check the necessary Disk clearance 2.2 mm to 2.4 mm.
  If the disk clearance is too small, insert thinner inner disks or (and) a thinner snap ring.

If disk clearance is too big, install thicker inner disks or (and) and a thicker snap ring.

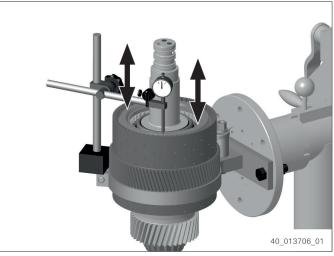


Fig. 263

Thickness of the two optional inner disks must not differ by more than 0.7 mm.

58. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

## 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat bearing inner ring.

- 59. Slide on bearing inner ring until contact is obtained.
- 60. Let bearing inner ring cool down.
- 61. Adjust bearing inner ring.
- 62. Insert bearing outer ring into spur gear until contact is obtained.

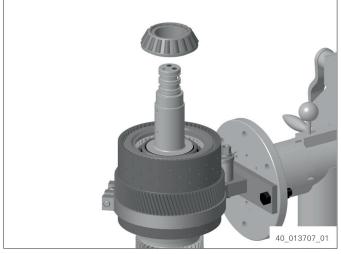


Fig. 264



63. Slide spur gear (1) onto shaft until contact is obtained. Insert spur gear into disk package by short mutual rotary motions.

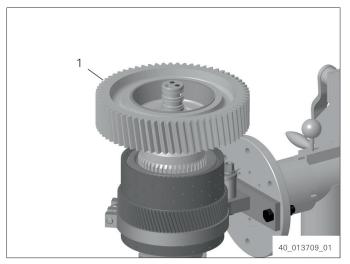


Fig. 266

64. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

# 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces.

Slight or moderate injury possible.

 $\Rightarrow$  Wear protective gloves.

Heat up roller bearing.

- 65. Slide on roller bearing until contact is obtained.
- 66. Let the roller bearing cool down.
- 67. Adjust bearing inner ring.

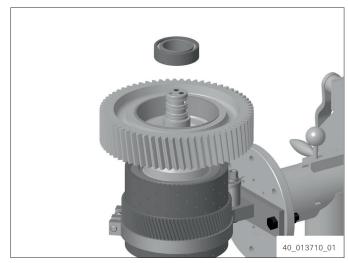


Fig. 267

- 68. Check function of the clutches by applying compressed air.
  - → Closing and opening of the clutch is clearly audible.

If closing and opening is not audible, disassemble and check clutch.

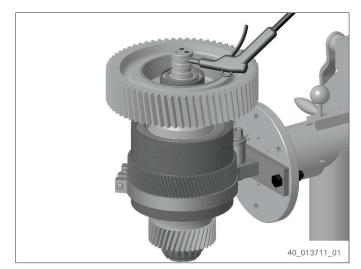


Fig. 268

69. Grease annular grooves of shaft.

71. Fix spur gear axially by means of

AA00.317.255 [Load ring].

5870.345.033 [Assembly fixture] and

pulled out of the disk package.

 $\rightarrow$  Spur gear has been fixed and cannot be

70. Insert R-rings (1).



Fig. 269

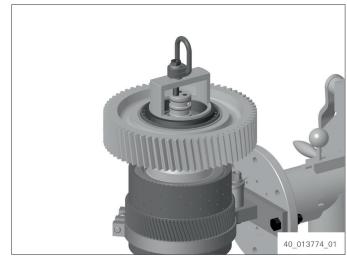


Fig. 270

#### Installing clutches

Special tools:

- 5870.204.002 Eyebolt
- 5870.345.033 Assembly fixture
- AA00.317.255 Load ring

# 1. **CAUTION**

Risk of crushing due to moving load. Slight to moderate injury possible.

- $\Rightarrow$  Move load slowly and carefully.
- $\Rightarrow$  Do not reach into danger area.

Insert clutch KV/K1 into housing by means of 5870.204.002 [Eyebolt] and crane.

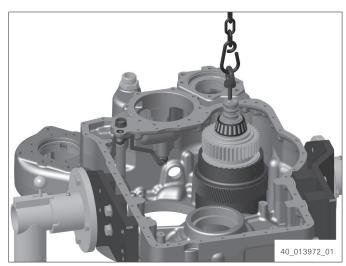


Fig. 271

# 2. CAUTION

Risk of crushing due to moving load. Slight to moderate injury possible.

- ⇒ Move load slowly and carefully.
   ⇒ Down to be interval
- $\Rightarrow$  Do not reach into danger area.

Insert clutch KR/K2 by means of 5870.204.002 [Eyebolt] and crane.

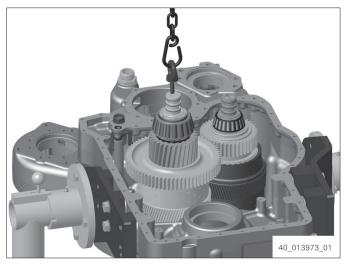


Fig. 272

3. Check position of gear (1). Flush-align tapered roller bearings and housing hole.

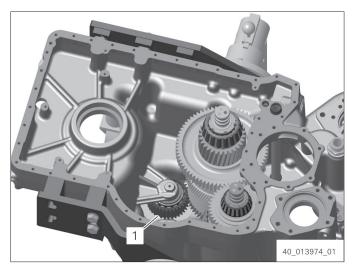


Fig. 273



4.

Risk of crushing due to moving load. Slight to moderate injury possible.

- $\Rightarrow$  Move load slowly and carefully.
- $\Rightarrow$  Do not reach into danger area.

Slightly lift clutch KR/K2 (1) and move in direction of arrow.

- Insert clutch K3/K4 into housing by means of 5870.345.033 [Assembly fixture], AA00.317.255 [Load ring] and crane.
- 6. Remove AA00.317.255 [Load ring] and 5870.345.033 [Assembly fixture].

#### Installing output gear

Special tools:

- 5870.100.054 Stop washer
- 5870.204.002 Eyebolt

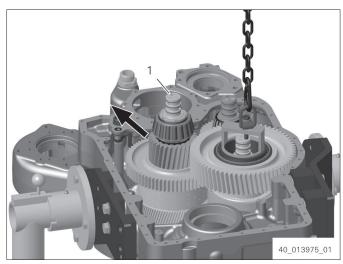


Fig. 274

 Insert cylindrical roller bearing (1) into housing hole until contact is obtained.

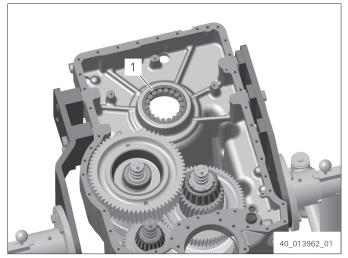


Fig. 275

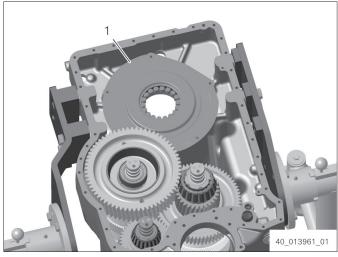
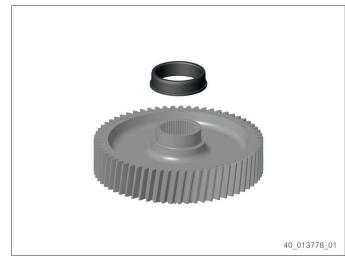


Fig. 276





2. Place cover sheet (1) into position.

3. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

# 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible.

 $\Rightarrow$  Wear protective gloves.

Heat bearing inner ring.

- 4. Slide bearing inner ring onto gear until contact is obtained.
- 5. Let bearing inner ring cool down.

6. Adjust bearing inner ring.

# 7. **CAUTION**

Risk of crushing due to moving load. Slight to moderate injury possible.

- $\Rightarrow$  Move load slowly and carefully.
- $\Rightarrow$  Do not reach into danger area.

Use 5870.100.054 [Stop washer], 5870.204.002 [Eyebolt] and crane to insert gear into the housing. Insert gear into the cylindrical roller bearing until contact is obtained.

- 8. Place cover sheet (1) into position.
- Bolt in and tighten cap screws.
   Tightening torque: 23 Nm

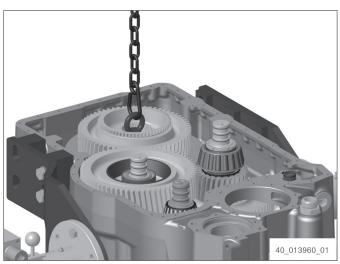


Fig. 278

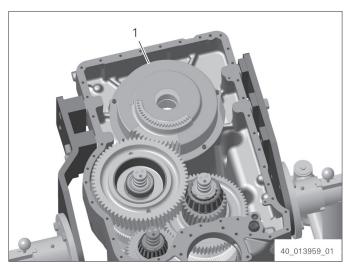


Fig. 279

#### Installing suction tube

- 1. Insert suction tube (1).
- Bolt in and tighten cap screws (2). Tightening torque: 23 Nm

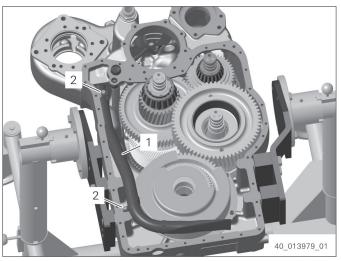


Fig. 280

#### Fitting the cover to the housing

Special tools:

• 5870.281.061 Load-lifting equipment

Operating supplies and auxiliary materials:

- 0666.790.033 LOCTITE 574
- Screw in the adapter with O-ring (1) and tighten.
   Tightening torque: 117 Nm
- Bolt in screw plugs with O-ring (2) and tighten.
   Tightening torque: 35 Nm

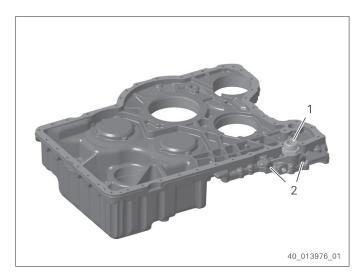


Fig. 281

3. Apply 0666.790.033 [LOCTITE 574] onto the mounting face (1).

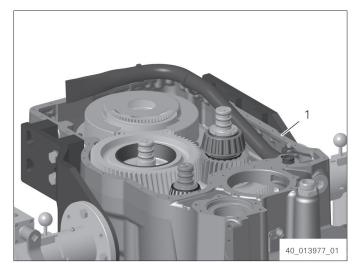


Fig. 282

4. Fit 5870.281.061 [Load-lifting equipment] to the cover.

# 5. **AUTION**

Risk of crushing due to moving load. Slight to moderate injury possible.

- ⇒ Move load slowly and carefully.
- $\Rightarrow$  Do not reach into danger area.

Mount cover using a crane.

# 6. **CAUTION**

Risk of injury due to parts flying away. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective goggles.

Flush-mount both pins (1).

Bolt in and tighten cap screws.
 Tightening torque: 46 Nm

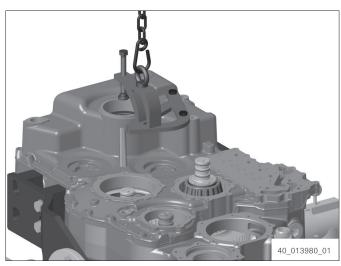


Fig. 283

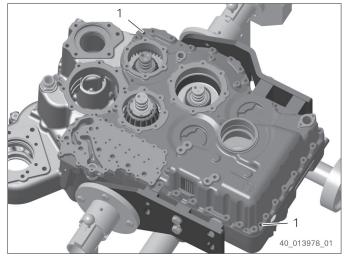


Fig. 284

#### Setting bearing preload of clutches

Special tools:

2.

- 5870.320.014 Assembly fixture
- 5870.320.018 Inserting tool
- 5870.200.022 Straightedge
- 5870.204.007 Locating pin

Setting bearing preload of clutches K3/K4

1. Insert sealing plug (1) into hole of cover by means of 5870.320.014 [Assembly fixture] and 5870.320.018 [Inserting tool].

Insert sealing plug (1) into hole with 5870.320.014 [Assembly fixture] and

5870.320.018 [Inserting tool].



Fig. 285

1

Fig. 286

- 3. Insert bearing inner ring (1) into bearing outer ring.
- 4. Rotate bearing inner ring in both directions several times.
- Use depth gauge and
   5870.200.022 [Straightedge] to measure the distance from mounting face to front face of the bearing inner ring.

Distance A = e. g. 43.70 mm

Measure at several points and calculate the average.

- 6. Use depth gage, parallel gage blocks and 5870.200.022 [Straightedge] to measure distance from mounting face to contact face of bearing inner ring.
  Distance B = e.g. 42.20 mm
- 7. Calculate thickness of spacer washer for Bearing preload 0.12 mm to 0.18 mm.

Calculation example: s = distance A - distance B + mean value of required bearing preload s = 43.70 mm - 42.20 mm + 0.15 mm s = 1.65 mm

8. Slide spacer washer with the calculated thickness, e. g. s = 1.65 mm onto the cover.

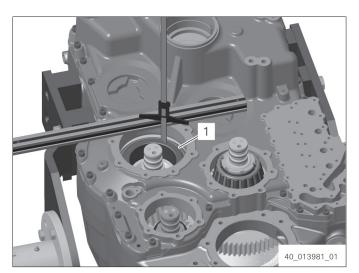


Fig. 287



Fig. 288



Fig. 289

9. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

#### 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat bearing inner ring.

- 10. Slide on bearing inner ring until contact is obtained.
- 11. Let bearing inner ring cool down.
- 12. Adjust bearing inner ring.
- 13. Turn two 5870.204.007 [Locating pin] into cover.
- 14. Center R-rings (1).



Fig. 290

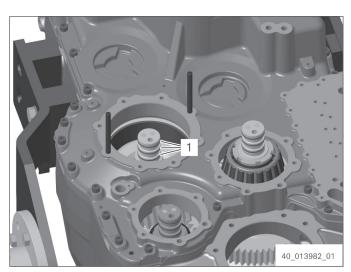


Fig. 291

- 15. Grease O-ring.
- 16. Insert O-ring (1) into annular groove.
- 17. Carry out the following three work steps immediately one after the other.

## 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

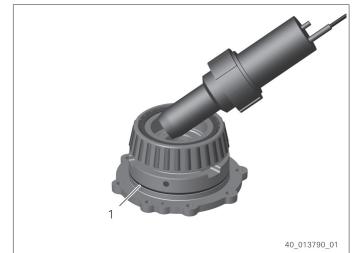
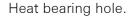


Fig. 292



- 18. Slide on cover (1).
- Turn in and tighten hexagon screws evenly. Tightening torque: 46 Nm

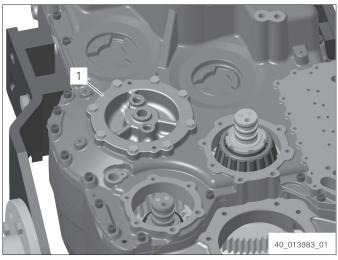


Fig. 293

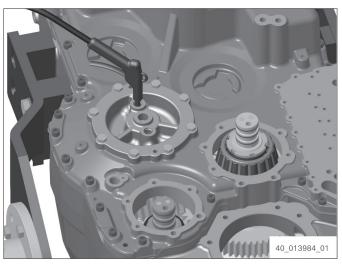


Fig. 294

- 20. Check function of the clutches by applying compressed air.
  - → Closing and opening of the clutch is clearly audible.

If closing and opening is not audible, remove cover and check R-rings.

Setting bearing preload of clutch KR/K2

21. Insert sealing plug (1) into hole of cover by means of 5870.320.014 [Assembly fixture] and 5870.320.018 [Inserting tool].



Fig. 295





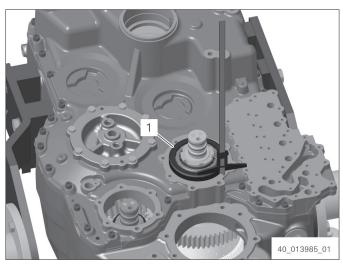


Fig. 297

22. Insert sealing plug (1) into hole with 5870.320.014 [Assembly fixture] and 5870.320.018 [Inserting tool].

- 23. Insert bearing outer ring (1) until contact is obtained.
- 24. Use depth gage to measure distance from front face of bearing outer ring to mounting face.Distance A = e. g. 16.20 mm

3-193

- 25. Use depth gage to measure distance from mounting face to contact face of bearing inner ring.Distance B = e.g. 17.75 mm
- 26. Calculate thickness of shim for Bearing preload 0.12 mm to 0.18 mm.

Calculation example: s = distance B - distance A + mean value ofthe required bearing preload s = 17.75 mm - 16.20 mm + 0.15 mms = 1.70 mm

Use grease to insert shim (1) with the calculated thickness, e. g. s = 1.70 mm into the cover.

Turn two 5870.204.007 [Locating pin] into

28. Grease O-ring.

30.

31.

cover.

Center R-rings (1).

29. Insert O-ring (2) into annular groove.



Fig. 298



Fig. 299

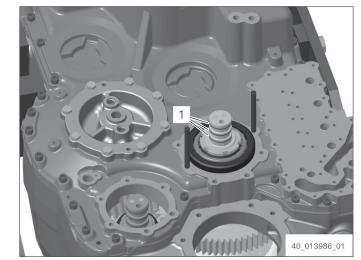


Fig. 300

- 32. Slide on cover (1).
- Turn in and tighten hexagon screws evenly. Tightening torque: 46 Nm

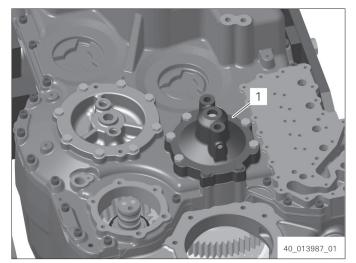


Fig. 301

- 34. Check function of the clutches by applying compressed air.
  - → Closing and opening of the clutch is clearly audible.

If closing and opening is not audible, remove cover and check R-rings.

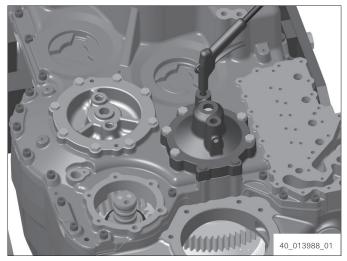


Fig. 302

Setting bearing preload of clutch KV/K1

35. Insert sealing plugs (1) into holes of the bearing cover using 5870.320.014 [Assembly fixture] and 5870.320.018 [Inserting tool].

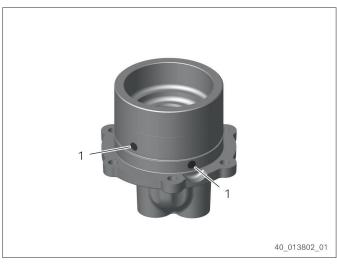


Fig. 303

- 36. Put on bearing outer ring (1).
- 37. Rotate bearing outer ring in both directions several times.
- 38. Use depth gage to measure distance from mounting face to front face of bearing outer ring.
  Distance A = e. g. 52.60 mm

Measure at several points and calculate the average.

Insert ring with chamfered side facing downwards into the bearing cover.

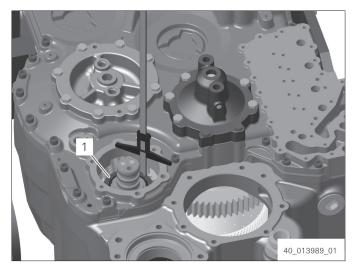


Fig. 304



Fig. 305

- 40. Use depth gage to measure distance from mounting face to plane face of the ring. Distance B = e.g. 50.75 mm
- 41. Calculate thickness of shim for Bearing preload 0.12 mm to 0.18 mm.

Calculation example: s = distance A - distance B + mean value of required bearing preload s = 52.60 mm - 50.75 mm + 0.15 mm s = 2.00 mm

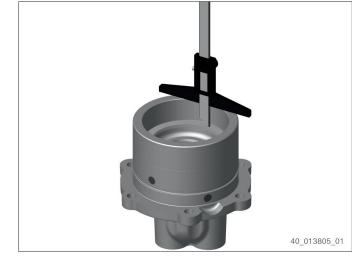


Fig. 306

42. Insert shim with the calculated thickness,e. g. s = 2.00 mm into the bearing cover.

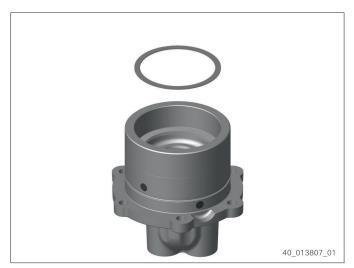


Fig. 307

- 43. Insert bearing outer ring (1) until contact is obtained.
- 44. Grease O-ring.
- 45. Insert O-ring (2) into annular groove.

Center R-rings (1).

46.

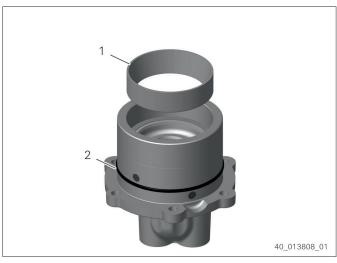


Fig. 308

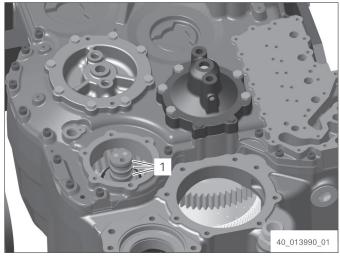


Fig. 309

- 47. Turn two 5870.204.007 [Locating pin] into cover.
- 48. Carry out the following three work steps immediately one after the other.

## 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible.

 $\Rightarrow$  Wear protective gloves.

Heat up hole.

- 49. Insert bearing cover (1).
- 50. Turn in and tighten hexagon screws evenly. Tightening torque: **46 Nm**

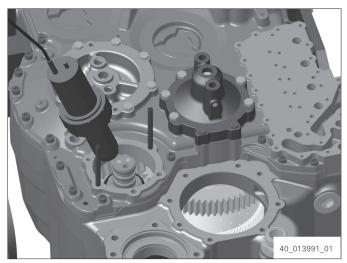


Fig. 310

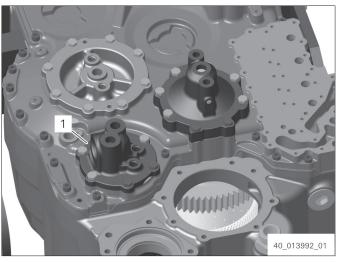


Fig. 311

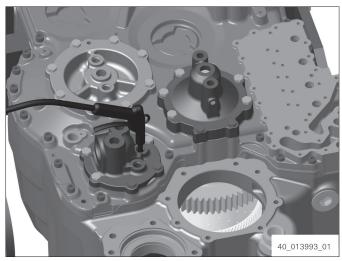


Fig. 312

- 51. Check function of the clutches by applying compressed air.
  - → Closing and opening of the clutch is clearly audible.

If closing and opening is not audible, remove bearing cover and check R-rings.

#### 10.3 Installing the output shaft

1. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.



Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat up hole in gear.

- 2. Insert output shaft (1) with long toothing into gear until contact is obtained.
- 3. Let gear cool down.
- 4. Adjust output shaft.

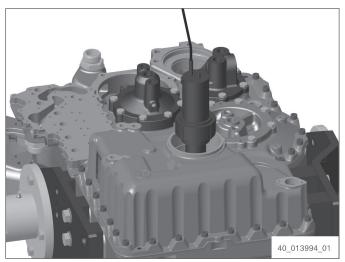


Fig. 313

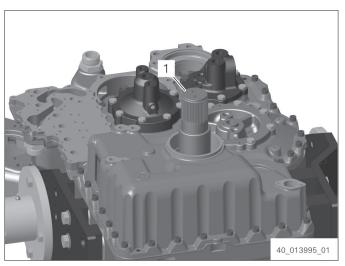


Fig. 314

Fig. 315

Setting axial clearance of output shaft

Use depth gage to measure distance from front face of the cover to contact face of the shim.
Distance A = e. g. 66.90 mm

- Use depth gage to measure distance from front face of cover to contact face of ball bearing.
   Distance B = e.g. 64.20 mm
- Calculate thickness of shim for Axial clearance of output shaft 0.30 mm to 0.50 mm.

Calculation example: s = distance A - distance B - mean value of axial clearance s = 66.90 mm - 64.20 mm - 0.40 mm s = 2.30 mm

8. Slide on shim (1) with the calculated thickness, e. g. s = 2.30 mm.

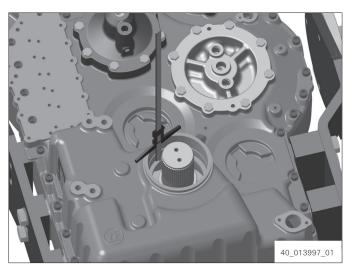


Fig. 316

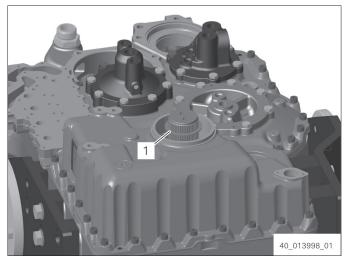


Fig. 317

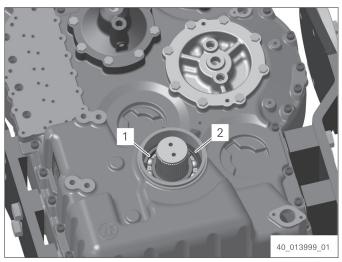


Fig. 318

- 9. Insert ball bearing (1) until contact is obtained.
- 10. Insert retaining ring (2) into annular groove.

#### Installing yokes

Special tools:

3.

obtained.

- 5870.048.290 Driver tool
- AA01.368.722 Press-in bush
- 5870.057.009 Driver tool
- 5870.260.002 Handle
- 5870.048.265 Driver tool

Operating supplies and auxiliary materials:

• 0666.690.191 PHÖNIX SPIRITUS

Installing yoke on output side

1. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

Apply 0666.690.191 [PHÖNIX SPIRITUS] to outer diameter of the shaft sealing ring.

2. Use 5870.048.290 [Driver tool] to insert shaft sealing ring (1) with seal lip facing the oil chamber.

Use AA01.368.722 [Press-in bush] to force screen sheet onto yoke until contact is

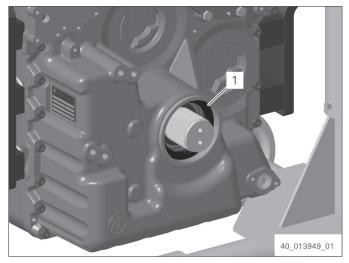


Fig. 319

Fig. 320

4. Slide yoke (1) onto output shaft until contact is obtained.

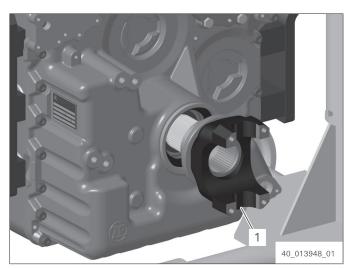


Fig. 321

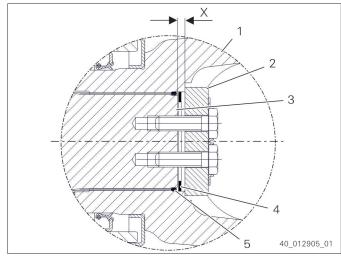


Fig. 322

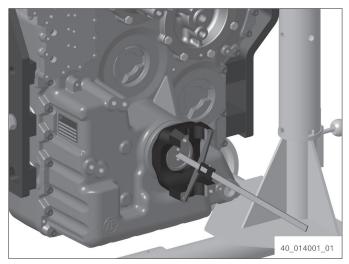


Fig. 323

5. Adjust the gap width (distance X).

Use depth gage to measure distance from

front face of the yoke to front face of the

Distance A = e. g. 79.50 mm

- 1 = Yoke
- 2 = Washer
- 3 = Output shaft
- 4 = Washer
- 5 = O-ring

output shaft.

6.

- Use depth gage to measure distance from front face to contact face of the washer on the yoke.
  Distance B = e.g. 78.00 mm
- Calculate thickness s of shim for setting Gap width of the output flange 0.30 mm to 0.80 mm to the output shaft.

Calculation example: s = distance A - distance B - mean value of the required distance s = 79.50 mm - 78.00 mm - 0.50 mm s = 1.00 mm

- 9. Insert O-ring (1) in the space between output shaft and yoke.
- 10. Insert washer (2) with the calculated thickness, e. g. s = 1.00 mm.

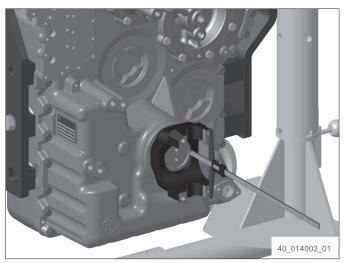


Fig. 324

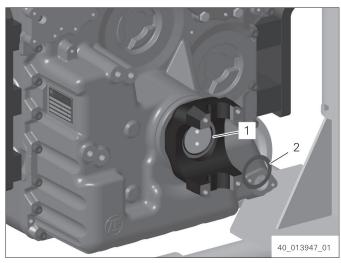


Fig. 325

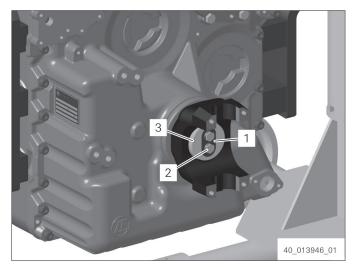


Fig. 326

11. Fix yoke with washer (3) and hexagon screws(2).Tightening torque: 46 Nm

# 12. **CAUTION**

Risk of injury due to parts flying away. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective goggles.

Mount locking plate (1) using the 5870.057.009 [Driver tool] and 5870.260.002 [Handle] until contact is obtained.

Installing yoke on converter side

13. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

Apply 0666.690.191 [PHÖNIX SPIRITUS] to outer diameter of the shaft sealing ring.

14. Use 5870.048.265 [Driver tool ] to insert shaft sealing ring (1) with seal lip facing the oil chamber.

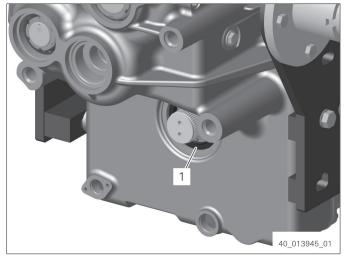


Fig. 327

15. Use AA01.368.722 [Press-in bush] to press protecting plate onto the yoke until contact is obtained.

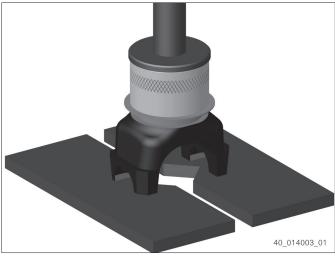


Fig. 328

16. Slide yoke (1) onto output shaft until contact is obtained.

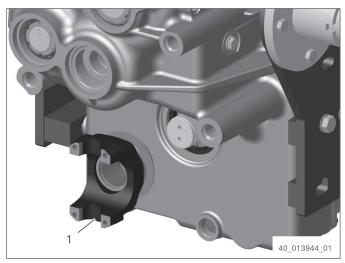
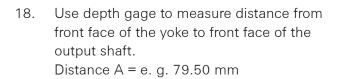


Fig. 329

- 17. Adjust the gap width (distance X).
  - 1 = Yoke
  - 2 = Washer
  - 3 = Output shaft
  - 4 = Washer
  - 5 = O-ring



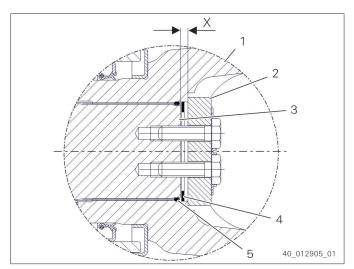


Fig. 330

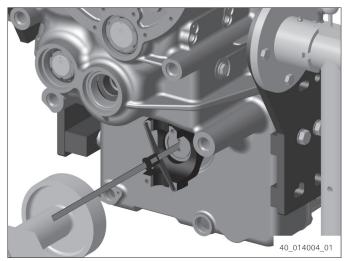


Fig. 331

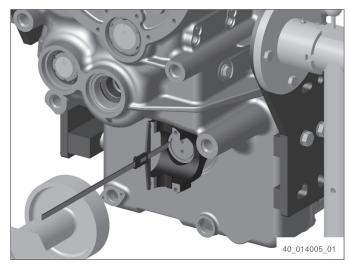


Fig. 332

- 19. Use depth gage to measure distance from front face to contact face of the washer on the yoke.Distance B = e.g. 78.00 mm
- Calculate thickness s of shim for setting Gap width of the output flange 0.30 mm to 0.80 mm to the output shaft.

Calculation example: s = distance A - distance B - mean value of the required distance s = 79.50 mm - 78.00 mm - 0.50 mm s = 1.00 mm

- 21. Insert O-ring (2) in the space between output shaft and yoke.
- 22. Insert washer (1) with the calculated thickness, e. g. s = 1.00 mm.

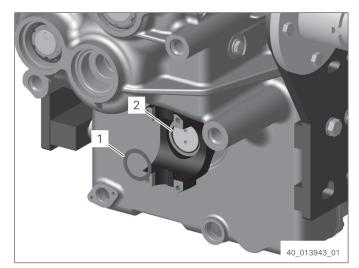


Fig. 333

23. Fix yoke with washer (3) and hexagon screws (2).Tightening torque: **46 Nm** 

Tightening torque: 46 Nm

# 24. **CAUTION**

Risk of injury due to parts flying away. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective goggles.

Mount locking plate (1) using the 5870.057.009 [Driver tool] and 5870.260.002 [Handle] until contact is obtained.

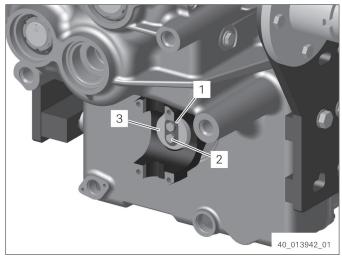


Fig. 334

#### Installing countershaft

Special tools:

• 5870.204.007 Locating pin

Operating supplies and auxiliary materials:

- 0666.690.248 LOCTITE 243
- 0666.690.191 PHÖNIX SPIRITUS

- 1. Center gear, bearing inner rings and ring.
- 2. Carry out the following three work steps immediately one after the other.

#### 

4.

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat up bearing inner rings.

3. Bolt one 5870.204.007 [Locating pin] (1) into housing.

Insert axle (1) until contact is obtained.

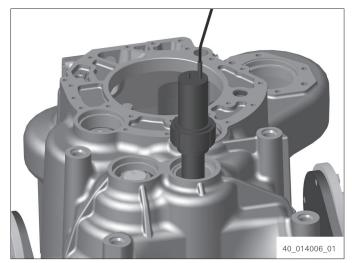


Fig. 335

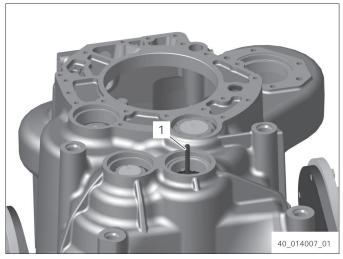


Fig. 336

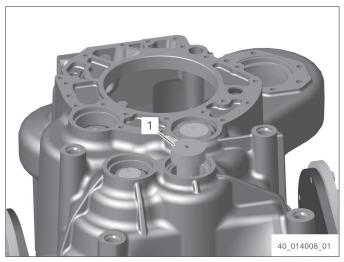


Fig. 337

- 5. Remove 5870.204.007 [Locating pin].
- 6. Apply 0666.690.248 [LOCTITE 243] to the thread of the hexagon screw.
- Turn in and tighten hexagon screw (1).
   Tightening torque: 46 Nm

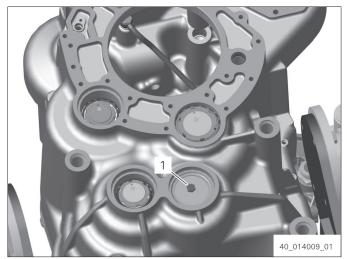


Fig. 338

8. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

Apply 0666.690.191 [PHÖNIX SPIRITUS] to the outer diameter of the protection cap.

9. Flush-mount protection cap (1) with the open side facing inwards into the housing hole.



Fig. 339

#### Assembling and installing the power take-offs (variant with PTO) 1, 3 and 4)

#### Installing PTOs 3 and 4

Special tools:

• 5870.200.113 Feeler gauge

Operating supplies and auxiliary materials:

• 0666.690.191 PHÖNIX SPIRITUS

- 1. Insert plug with O-ring (1) into housing hole.
- 2. Fasten plug with cap screw. Tightening torque: **23 Nm**

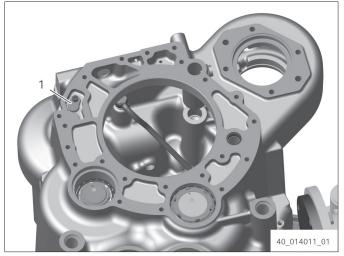


Fig. 340

3. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

Apply 0666.690.191 [PHÖNIX SPIRITUS] to the outer diameter of the protection cap.

- 4. Flush-mount protection cap (2) with the open side facing inwards into the housing hole.
- 5. Insert the ball bearing (1) into the housing hole until contact is obtained.
- 6. Insert gear (1) with the short collar facing downwards into the housing.
- 7. Center gear.
- 8. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

## 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces.

Slight or moderate injury possible.

 $\Rightarrow$  Wear protective gloves.

Heat hole in the gear and bearing inner ring of the ball bearing.

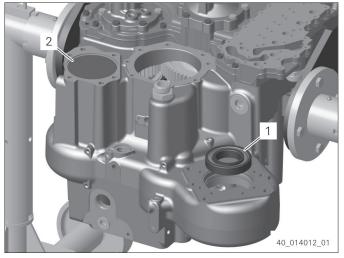


Fig. 341

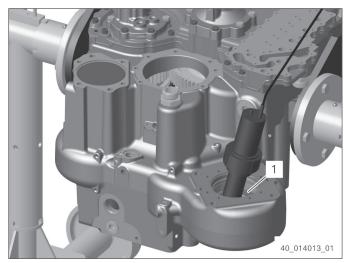


Fig. 342

- 9. Insert driver (1) with the short collar facing downwards until contact is obtained.
- 10. Let gear cool down.
- 11. Adjust the driver.

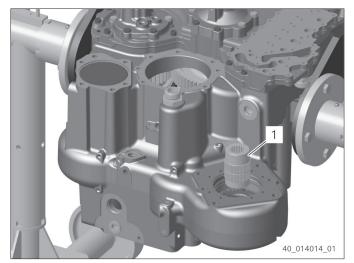


Fig. 343

Setting axial play of the gear bearing

- 12. Insert the ball bearing (3) into the housing hole until contact is obtained.
- 13. Insert shim (2) e. g. s = 1.40 mm.
- 14. Insert retaining ring (1) into annular groove.

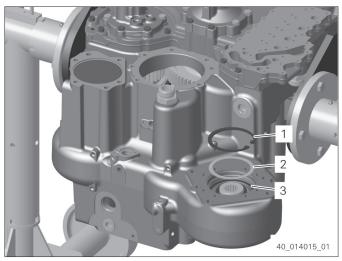


Fig. 344

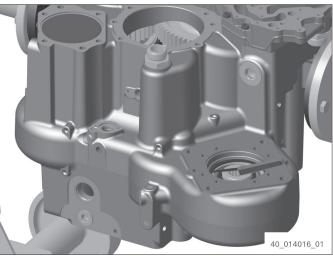


Fig. 345

15. Check Axial play gear bearing 0.20 mm to 0.30 mm with 5870.200.113 [Feeler gauge]. If the axial clearance is too small, install a thinner shim.

If the axial clearance is too large, install a thicker shim.

- 16. Grease O-ring.
- 17. Insert the O-ring (1) into the countersink of the housing.

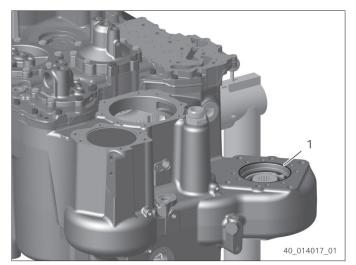


Fig. 346

Fig. 347

Fig. 348

Fix cover (1) with hexagon screws.
 Tightening torque: 46 Nm

- 19. Rotate transmission by 180.
- 20. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

Apply 0666.690.191 [PHÖNIX SPIRITUS] to the outer diameter of the protection cap.

21. Flush-mount protection cap (1) with the open side facing inwards into the housing hole.

22. Insert bearing outer rings into the gear until contact it obtained.

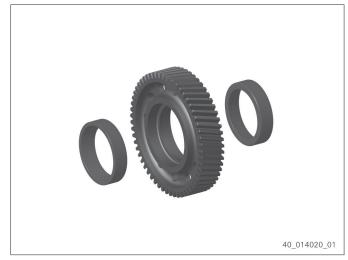


Fig. 349

- 23. Insert bearing inner rings into bearing outer rings.
- 24. Insert gear (1) into the housing.

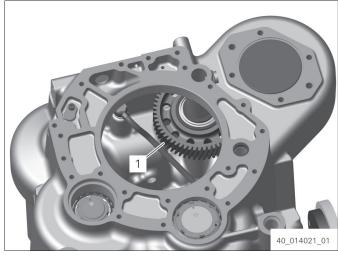


Fig. 350

Adjusting axial clearance of the gear bearing (intermediate gear)

- 25. Measure distance between housing and front side bearing inner ring with 5870.200.113 [Feeler gauge]. Distance = e. g. 1.45 mm
- 26. Calculate thickness of the shim for Axial clearance gear bearing (intermediate gear)0.01 mm to 0.10 mm.

Calculation example: s = distance - mean value of axial clearance s = 1.45 mm - 0.05 mm s = 1.40 mm

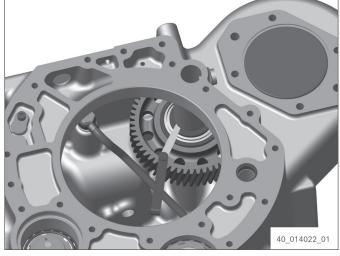


Fig. 351

27. Insert shim (1) with the calculated thicknesse. g. s = 1.40 mm.

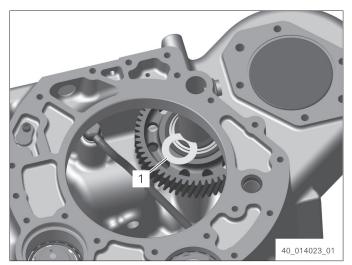


Fig. 352

- 28. Center gear and shim.
- 29. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

# 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with cold surface. Slight to moderate injury possible.

⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Undercool pin.

30. Insert pin (1) into housing hole until contact is obtained.

# 

Fig. 353

#### Installing pressure oil pump

Special tools:

- 5870.801.006 Hot air pot
- 5870.204.021 Fixing pin

#### Checking gear pump

1. Check individual parts of the gear pump for wear marks before assembling the transmission.

The gear pump is only available as a complete unit.

Loosen cap screws.

- 2. Remove cover (1).
- Check the cover, outer rotor, inner rotor and the pump housing for wear marks. In case of any damage, install new gear pump.
- 4. Insert outer rotor and inner rotor, with the chamfered tooth side facing the pump housing.
- 5. Insert cylindrical pins until contact is obtained.
- 6. Place the cover.
- Bolt in and tighten cap screws.
   Tightening torque: 23 Nm
   Tightening torque: 9.5 Nm
- 8. Insert bearing outer ring (1) until contact is obtained.
- 9. Grease O-ring.
- 10. Insert O-ring (2) into annular groove.

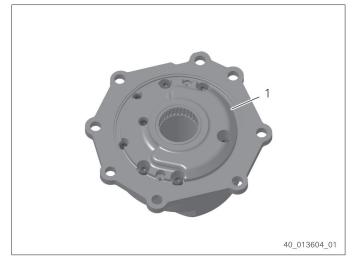


Fig. 354





11. Carry out the following three work steps immediately one after the other.

#### 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat up housing hole by means of hot air blower and 5870.801.006 [Hot air pot].

- 12. Screw two 5870.204.021 [Fixing pin] into the housing.
- 13. Insert gear pump (1) into housing hole until contact is obtained.

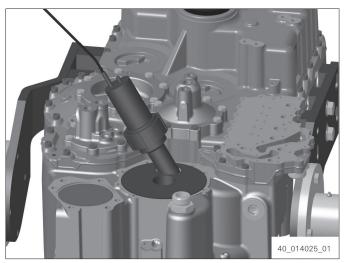


Fig. 356

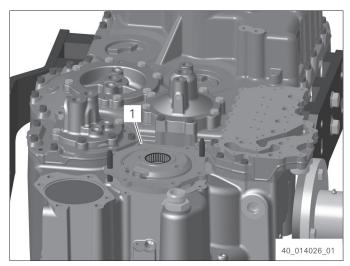


Fig. 357

- 14. Grease O-ring.
- 15. Slide O-ring (1) onto pump flange.



Fig. 358

- 16. Fit pump flange (1).
- 17. Fix pump flange and gear pump with hexagon screws.Tightening torque: **79 Nm**

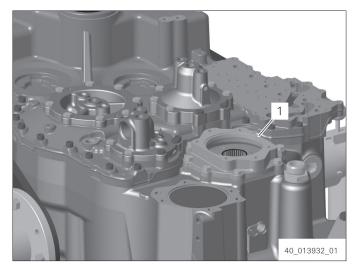


Fig. 359

#### Installing shaft

Operating supplies and auxiliary materials:

- 0666.690.248 LOCTITE 243
- 1. Slide shim (2) onto driver.
- 2. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

## 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat bearing inner ring.

- 3. Slide on bearing inner ring (1) until contact is obtained.
- 4. Let bearing inner ring cool down.
- 5. Adjust bearing inner ring.
- 6. Insert fitting key (3).

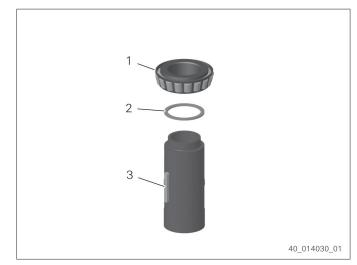


Fig. 360

7. Slide washer onto shaft.

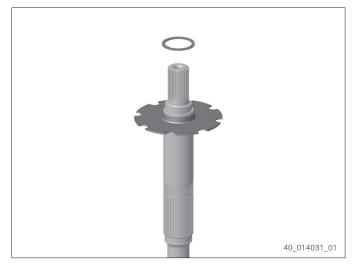


Fig. 361

- 8. Slide the driver (3) onto the shaft.
- 9. Insert spring washer (2) with the larger inner diameter facing upwards.
- 10. Apply 0666.690.248 [LOCTITE 243] to thread of cap screw.
- 11. Bolt in cap screw (1) and tighten. Tightening torque: **46 Nm**

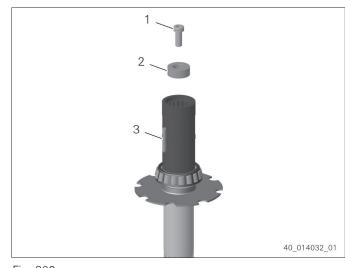


Fig. 362

12. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

# 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible.

⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat bearing inner ring.

- 13. Slide on bearing inner ring (1) onto the gear until contact is obtained.
- 14. Let bearing inner ring cool down.

- 15. Adjust bearing inner ring.
- 16. Insert retaining ring (2).
- 17. Slide on gear (1) until contact is obtained.

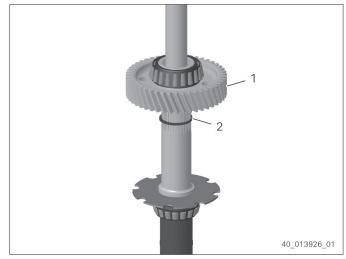


Fig. 364

- 18. Grease the annular groove on the shaft.
- 19. Insert and center R-ring (1).

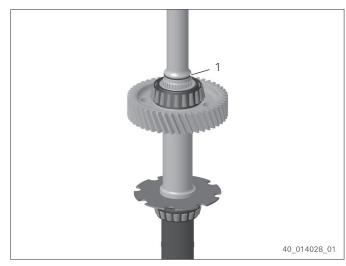


Fig. 365

- 20. Flush-align fitting key and fitting key groove.
- 21. Insert shaft (1) into the gear pump until contact is obtained.

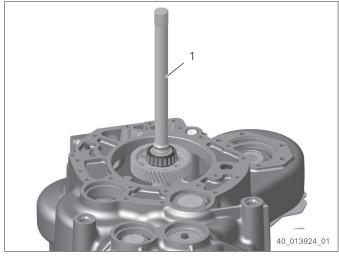


Fig. 366

- 22. Grease O-ring.
- 23. Insert the O-ring (1) into the countersink of the pump flange.

Secure the cover (1) with hexagon screws.

Tightening torque: 46 Nm

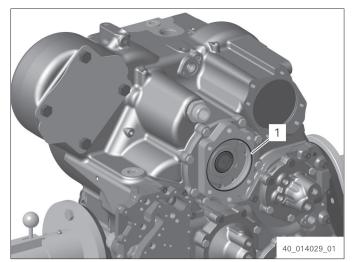


Fig. 367

Fig. 368

#### Assembling drive

#### Special tools:

24.

- 5870.320.016 Lever riveter
- 5870.801.006 Hot air pot
- 5870.204.007 Locating pin
- 5870.058.051 Driver tool
- 5870.260.002 Handle
- 5870.048.030 Driver tool
- 5870.204.021 Fixing pin
- AA02.247.426 Eyebolt

Operating supplies and auxiliary materials:

• 0666.690.191 PHÖNIX SPIRITUS

- Insert sealing plugs (1) into holes using 5870.320.016 [Lever riveter].
- Screw in and tighten screw plug with O-ring (2).
   Tightening torque: 35 Nm

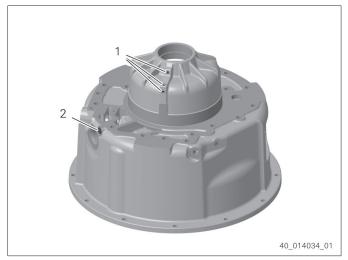


Fig. 369

3. Insert bearing outer ring (1) into bearing hole until contact is obtained.

Insert helical gear (1) with long collar facing upwards into torque converter bell housing.

4. Insert bearing inner ring (2).

5.

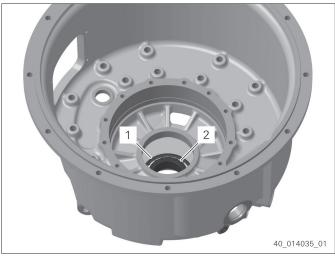


Fig. 370



6. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

## 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible.

 $\Rightarrow$  Wear protective gloves.

Heat up hole in helical gear and bearing inner ring.

7. Insert input shaft (1) until contact is obtained.

Carry out the following two work steps

Slight or moderate injury possible.

⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat bearing inner ring.

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot

Slide on bearing inner ring (2) until contact is

immediately one after the other.

**CAUTION** 

surfaces.

obtained.



Fig. 372

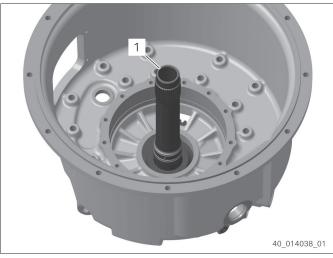
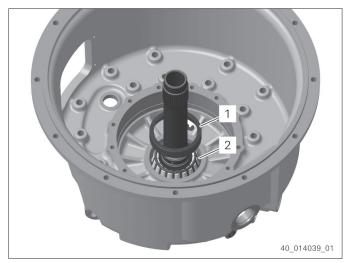


Fig. 373





10. Let bearing inner ring cool down.

8.

9.

3-221

- 11. Adjust bearing inner ring.
- 12. Insert bearing outer ring (1) until contact is obtained.
- 13. Grease annular grooves of input shaft.
- 14. Insert and center R-rings (1).

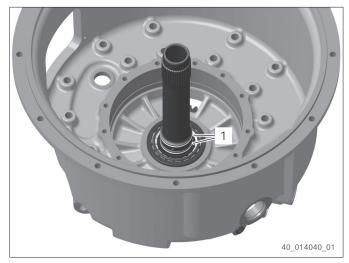


Fig. 375

15. Insert converter safety valve (2) into oil feed flange until contact is obtained.

# 16. **CAUTION**

Risk of injury due to parts flying away. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective goggles.

Flush-mount slotted pin (1).

- 17. Grease O-ring.
- 18. Slide on O-ring (3).

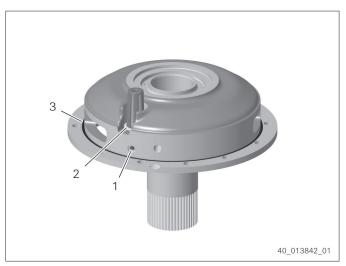


Fig. 376

19. Carry out the following three work steps immediately one after the other.

## 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat up hole with hot air blower and 5870.801.006 [Hot air pot].

- 20. Turn two 5870.204.007 [Locating pin] into torque converter bell housing.
- 21. Insert oil feed flange (1) into hole until contact is obtained.

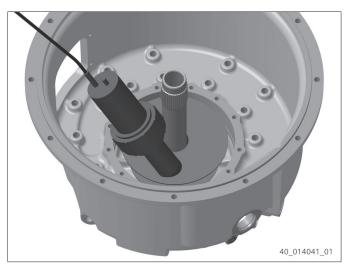


Fig. 377

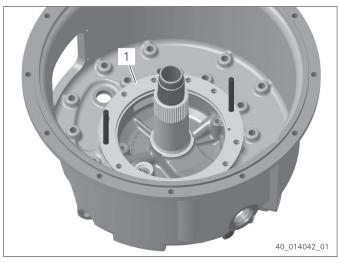
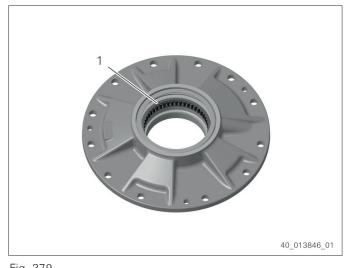


Fig. 378

 Insert needle sleeve (1) into bearing cover using 5870.058.051 [Driver tool] and 5870.260.002 [Handle] until contact is obtained. Insert needle sleeve with marked front face showing upwards.





23. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

Apply 0666.690.191 [PHÖNIX SPIRITUS] to outer diameter of shaft sealing ring.

24. Insert shaft sealing ring (1) with 5870.048.030 [Driver tool].



Fig. 380

- 25. Grease O-ring.
- 26. Fit O-ring (1).

Fit bearing cover (1).

Tightening torque: 46 Nm

Turn in and tighten hexagon screws.

27.

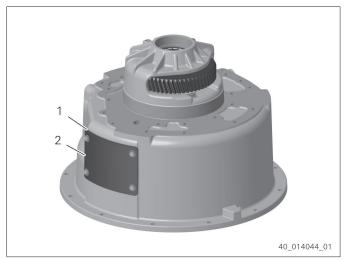
28.



Fig. 381



- 29. Push washers onto hexagon screws.
- Fix cover plate (1) and cover sheet (2) with hexagon screws.
   Tightening torque: 2 Nm (±1 Nm)





#### 31.

#### 

Risk of injury due to parts flying away. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective goggles.

Force in slotted pin until contact is obtained.



Fig. 384

32. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

Apply 0666.690.191 [PHÖNIX SPIRITUS] to the outer diameter of the protection caps.

33. Flush-mount protection caps (1) with the open side facing inwards into housing holes.

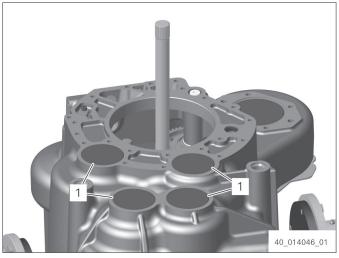


Fig. 385

- 34. Screw two 5870.204.021 [Fixing pin] into the housing.
- 35. Put on seal (1).

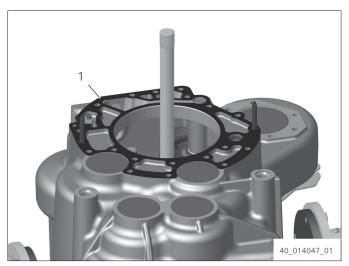


Fig. 386



Fig. 387

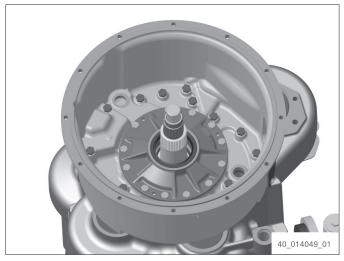


Fig. 388

# 36. **CAUTION**

Risk of crushing due to moving load. Slight to moderate injury possible.

- ⇒ Move load slowly and carefully.
- $\Rightarrow$  Do not reach into danger area.

Mount torque converter bell housing with two AA02.247.426 [Eyebolt] and a crane.

Turn in and tighten hexagon screws.
 Tightening torque: 115 Nm

- Insert sealing rings between oil tube (1) and torque converter bell housing.
- 39. Slide sealing ring onto hollow screws (2).
- 40. Screw in the hollow screws with sealing ring(2) and tighten them.Tightening torque: 130 Nm

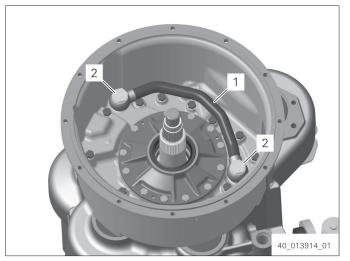


Fig. 389

#### Mounting engine connection and converter

Special tools:

- 5870.057.009 Driver tool
- 5870.260.002 Handle
- AA02.676.915 Load ring

Operating supplies and auxiliary materials:

- 0666.690.248 LOCTITE 243
- 1. Position flange shaft (2) onto converter.
- 2. Apply 0666.690.248 [LOCTITE 243] to thread of hexagon screws.
- 3. Screw in and tighten hexagon screws (1). Tightening torque: **68 Nm**

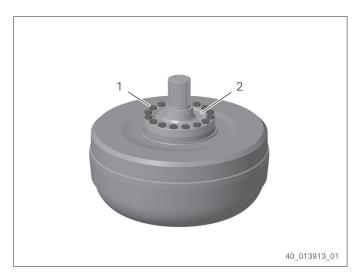


Fig. 390

- 4. Grease annular groove.
- 5. Insert and center R-ring (1).

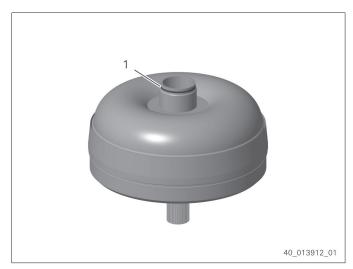


Fig. 391

- 6. Insert the ball bearing (2) in the cover until contact is obtained.
- 7. Insert V-ring (1).



Fig. 392



Risk of crushing due to hydraulic tool. Slight to moderate injury possible. ⇒ Do not reach into danger area.

Use suitable tools to press cover onto flange shaft until contact is obtained.



Fig. 393

9. Carry out the following two work steps immediately one after the other.

## 

Risk of burn injuries due to contact with hot surfaces. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective gloves.

Heat up internal spline.

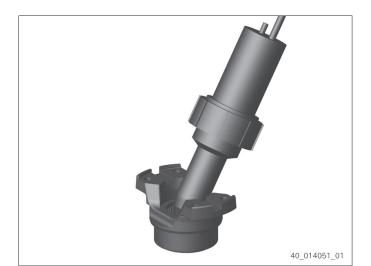


Fig. 394

10. Slide output flange (1) onto flange shaft until contact is obtained.



Fig. 395

 Fix output flange with washer (3) and hexagon screws (2).
 Tightening torque: 46 Nm

# 12. **CAUTION**

Risk of injury due to parts flying away. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Wear protective goggles.

Mount locking plate (1) using the 5870.057.009 [Driver tool] and 5870.260.002 [Handle] until contact is obtained.





# 13. **CAUTION**

Risk of crushing due to moving parts. Slight or moderate injury possible. ⇒ Do not reach into danger area!

Use two AA02.676.915 [Load ring] and crane to slide on cover and converter until contact is obtained. Mount the cover according to the marking.



Fig. 397

14. Insert hexagon screws (2) into holes and tighten nuts (1).Tightening torque: 46 Nm

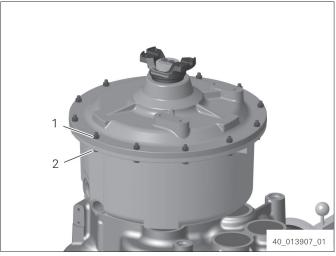
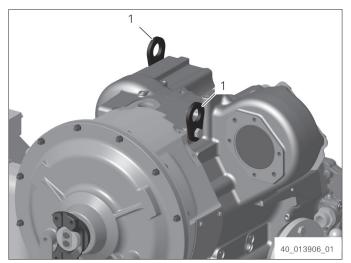


Fig. 398

### Mounting the fixing plates

 Fix the fixing plates (1) with hexagon screws. Tightening torque: 195 Nm







### Installing the torque converter pressure retaining valve

- 1. Insert the piston (2) into the torque converter bell housing.
- 2. Insert compression spring (1).

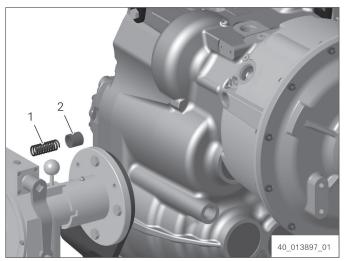


Fig. 400

Insert screw plug with O-ring (1) and tighten. Tightening torque: **130 Nm** 

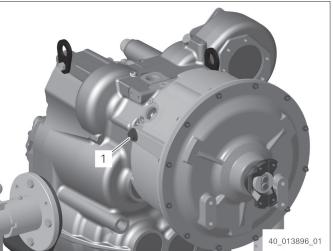


Fig. 401

### Assembling and installing shift system

### Installing duct plate

Special tools:

3.

• 5870.204.037 Fixing pin

- 1. Turn two 5870.204.037 [Fixing pin] into cover.
- 2. Slide on seal (1).

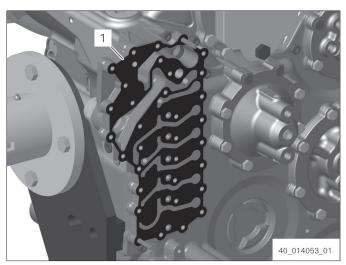


Fig. 402

Bolt in screw plugs (1) into duct plate and tighten.
 Tightening torque: 9.5 Nm

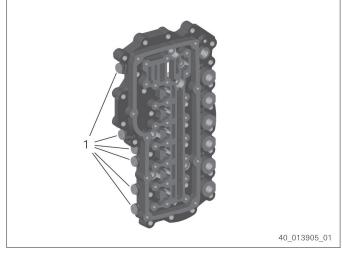


Fig. 403

- 4. Slide on duct plate (1).
- Fix duct plate with internal hexalobular bolts in the specified order. Tightening torque: 23 Nm

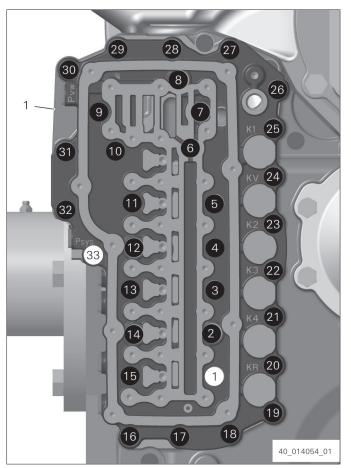


Fig. 404

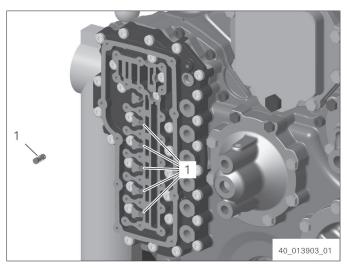


Fig. 405

### Assembling and mounting valve blocks

Insert valves (1) in duct plate.

Special tools:

6.

- 5870.204.063 Fixing pin
- AA02.416.230 Driver tool
- AA02.416.754 Driver tool

- AA02.414.200 Driver tool
- AA02.788.633 Torque wrench
- 1. Bolt two 5870.204.063 [Fixing pin] into the duct plate.
- 2. Slide on **new** intermediate plate (1).

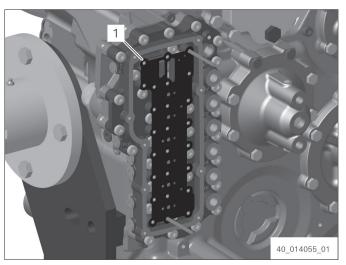


Fig. 406

- 3. Insert the control piston (1) in the hole.
- 4. Insert compression spring (2).
- 5. Oil O-ring.
- Insert O-ring in the annular groove of the plug (3).
- 7. Insert the plug (3) in the hole.

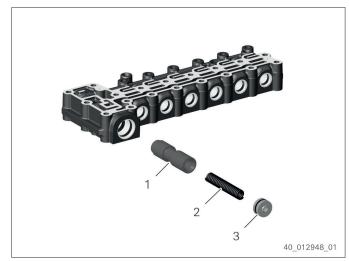


Fig. 407

 Press the plug inwards with AA02.416.230 [Driver tool] until contact is obtained and insert fixing plate (1).

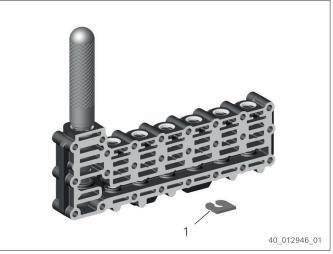


Fig. 408

- 9. Insert the compression spring (1) into the bore.
- 10. Insert the control piston (2).
- 11. Oil O-ring.

15.

- 12. Insert O-ring in the annular groove of the plug (3).
- 13. Insert the plug (3) in the hole.

Push on valve block (1).

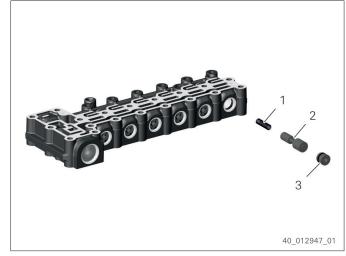


Fig. 409

 Push the plug inwards with the AA02.416.754 [Driver tool] until contact is obtained and insert the spring clip (1).

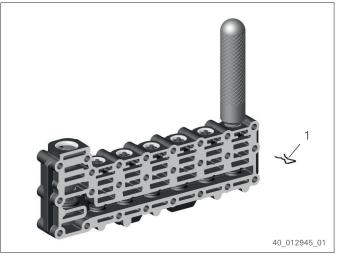


Fig. 410

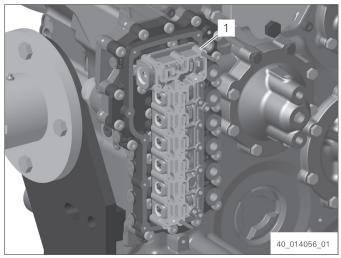


Fig. 411

16. Push on intermediate plate (1).

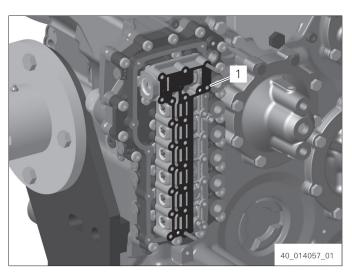


Fig. 412

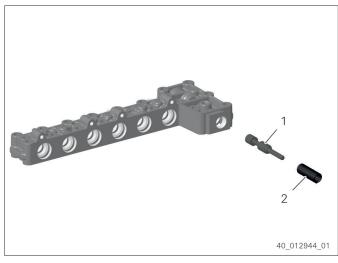


Fig. 413

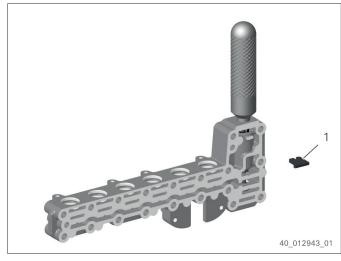


Fig. 414

- 17. Insert piston (1) in the hole.
- 18. Insert compression spring (2).

 Push the compression spring inwards with AA02.414.200 [Driver tool] until contact is obtained and insert the fixing plate (1). 20. Push on valve block (1).

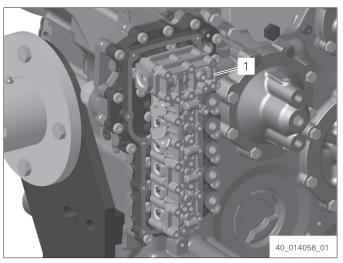


Fig. 415

Screw in and tighten the hexalobular driving screws (1).
 Tightening torque: 3 Nm

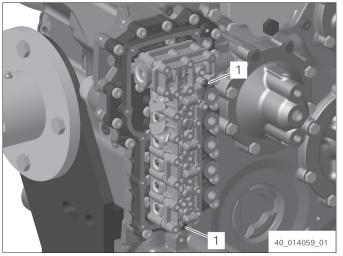


Fig. 416

Fixing valve blocks (Variant using the duct plate removed during disassembly)

- 22. Apply oil to the threads of the internal hexalobular bolts M 6x 85.
- 23. Bolt in internal hexalobular bolts M6 x 85 (1 bis 19) and tighten with AA02.788.633 [Torque wrench] in the specified order.
  Tightening torque: 2 Nm and 35° Additional tightening angle
- 24. Apply oil to the threads of the internal hexalobular bolts M 6x 50.
- 25. Bolt in internal hexalobular bolts M6 x 50 (20 bis 25) and tighten with AA02.788.633 [Torque wrench] in the specified order.
  Tightening torque: 2 Nm and 17° Additional tightening angle

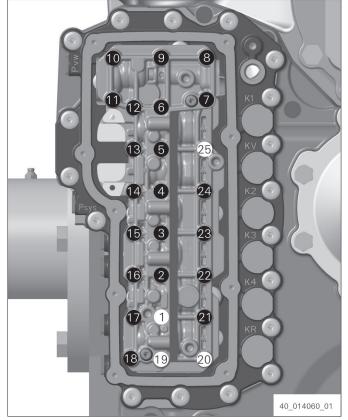


Fig. 417

Fixing valve blocks (Variant with new oil-free duct plate)

- Bolt in new non-lubricated internal hexalobular bolts M6 x 85 (1 bis 19) and tighten with AA02.788.633 [Torque wrench] in the specified order.
  Tightening torque: 3 Nm and 60° Additional tightening angle
- 27. Bolt in new non-lubricated internal hexalobular bolts M6 x 50 (20 bis 25) and tighten with AA02.788.633 [Torque wrench] in the specified order.
  Tightening torque: 3 Nm and 45° Additional tightening angle

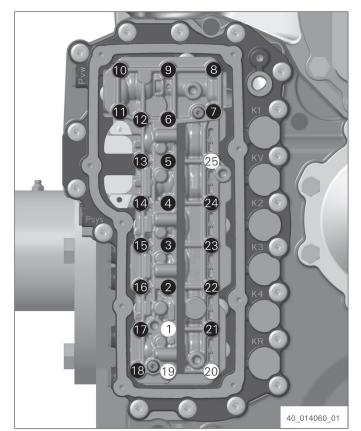


Fig. 418

#### Installing the pressure controllers

1. Pay attention to radial installation position of the pressure controllers.

Insert pressure controllers with O-rings (2) in valve block.

 Fix pressure controllers with clamping plate (1) and internal hexalobular bolts. Tightening torque: 9.5 Nm

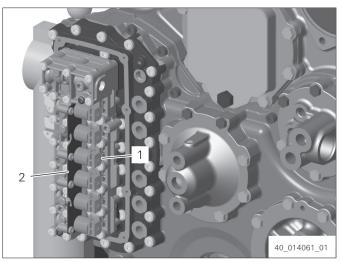


Fig. 419

- 3. Insert plugs (1) on the pressure controllers.
- 4. Fix plug (3) with fixing plate (4) and internal hexalobular bolts.Tightening torque: 9.5 Nm
- 5. Insert cable (2) in cable routing on the clamping plate.

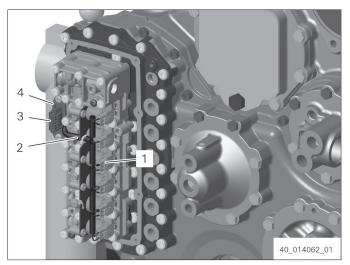


Fig. 420

### Installing control unit (EC4A)

Special tools:

- 5870.204.063 Fixing pin
- 1. Insert seal (1) in control unit (2).

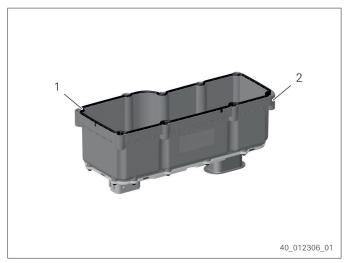


Fig. 421

- 2. Bolt two 5870.204.063 [Fixing pin] into the duct plate.
- 3. Slide on control unit.
- Bolt in internal hexalobular bolts and tighten in the specified order. Tightening torque: 9.5 Nm

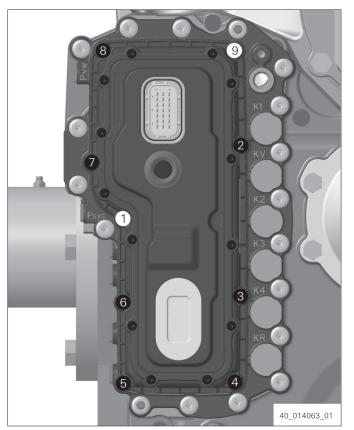


Fig. 422

### Installing the temperature sensors and the breather

- Bolt in breather (1) and tighten.
   Tightening torque: 12 Nm
- Screw in and tighten temperature sensors with O-ring (2). Tightening torque: 25 Nm

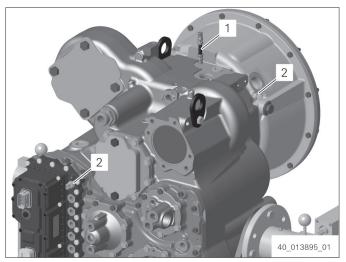


Fig. 423

### Installing the speed sensors

- 1. Insert speed sensors with O-ring (1) in housing holes.
- 2. Fix speed sensors with cap screws. Tightening torque: **9.5 Nm**

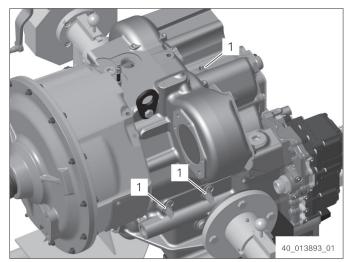


Fig. 424

- Insert speed sensor with sealing element (1) into the housing hole.
- 4. Fasten speed sensor with cap screw. Tightening torque: **9.5 Nm**

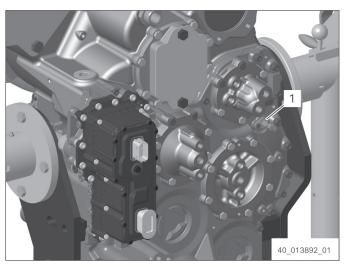


Fig. 425

### Attaching the hose assemblies

Attaching the hose assembly K1

- Insert the O-ring between the hose assembly
   (3) and the bearing cover (2).
- Turn in hollow screw with O-ring (1) and tighten.
   Tightening torque: 45 Nm
- 3. Insert O-ring between hose assembly (3) and duct plate (5).
- Turn in hollow screw with O-ring (4) and tighten.
   Tightening torque: 45 Nm

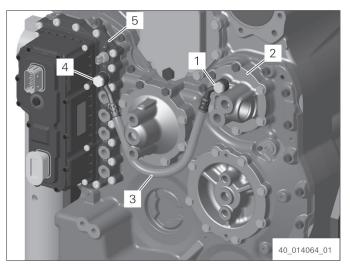


Fig. 426

Attaching the hose assembly KV

- 5. Insert the O-ring between the hose assembly(3) and the bearing cover (2).
- Turn in hollow screw with O-ring (1) and tighten.
   Tightening torque: 45 Nm
- 7. Insert O-ring between hose assembly (3) and duct plate (5).
- Turn in hollow screw with O-ring (4) and tighten.
   Tightening torque: 45 Nm

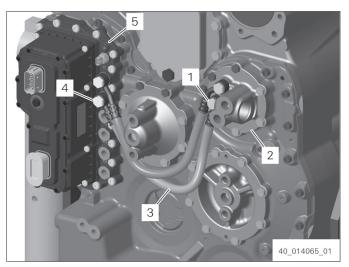


Fig. 427

Attaching the hose assembly K2

- 9. Insert O-ring between hose assembly (3) and the cover (2).
- Turn in hollow screw with O-ring (1) and tighten.
   Tightening torque: 45 Nm
- 11. Insert O-ring between hose assembly (3) and duct plate (5).
- Turn in hollow screw with O-ring (4) and tighten.
   Tightening torque: 45 Nm

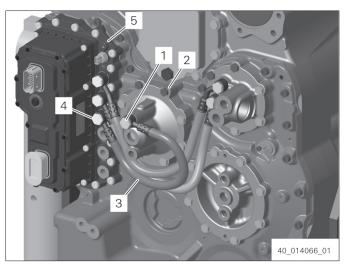


Fig. 428

#### Attaching the hose assembly K3

- 13. Insert O-ring between hose assembly (3) and the cover (2).
- 14. Turn in hollow screw with O-ring (1) and tighten.Tightening torque: 45 Nm
- 15. Insert O-ring between hose assembly (3) and duct plate (5).
- Turn in hollow screw with O-ring (4) and tighten.
   Tightening torque: 45 Nm

Fig. 429

#### Attaching the hose assembly K4

- 17. Insert O-ring between hose assembly (3) and the cover (2).
- Turn in hollow screw with O-ring (1) and tighten.
   Tightening torque: 45 Nm
- 19. Insert O-ring between hose assembly (3) and duct plate (5).
- 20. Turn in hollow screw with O-ring (4) and tighten.Tightening torque: 45 Nm

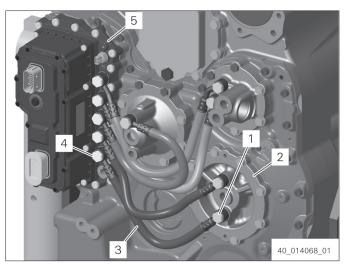


Fig. 430

#### Attaching the hose assembly KR

- 21. Insert O-ring between hose assembly (3) and the cover (2).
- 22. Turn in hollow screw with O-ring (1) and tighten.Tightening torque: 45 Nm
- 23. Insert O-ring between hose assembly (3) and duct plate (5).
- 24. Turn in hollow screw with O-ring (4) and tighten.Tightening torque: 45 Nm

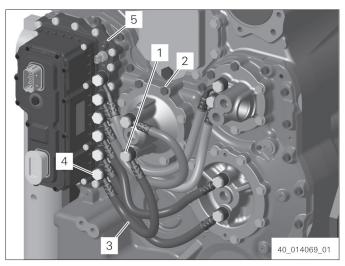


Fig. 431

Attaching the hose assembly S2

- 25. Insert the O-ring between the hose assembly(3) and the bearing cover (2).
- 26. Turn in hollow screw with O-ring (1) and tighten.Tightening torque: 60 Nm
- 27. Insert O-ring between hose assembly (3) and the cover (5).
- Turn in hollow screw with O-ring (4) and tighten.
   Tightening torque: 60 Nm

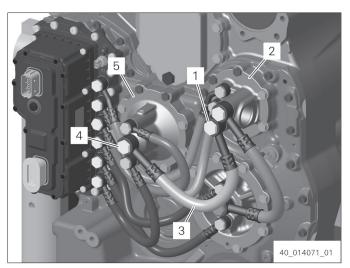


Fig. 432

#### Installing the tube

- 1. Insert sealing ring between tube (3) and housing.
- 2. Insert sealing ring between tube (3) and torque converter bell housing.
- Bolt in hollow screws with O-ring (1) and tighten.
   Tightening torque: 45 Nm
- Bolt in screw plugs with O-ring (2) and tighten.
   Tightening torque: 20 Nm

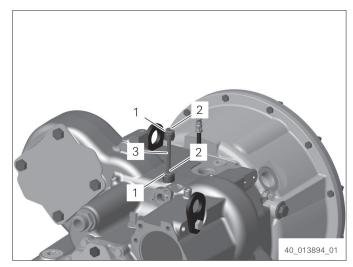


Fig. 433

### Installing pressure controller (converter clutch valve)

- 1. Insert pressure controller with O-rings (1) into the housing hole.
- Fix pressure controller with two cap screws. Tightening torque: 9.5 Nm

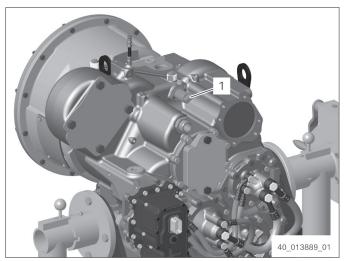


Fig. 434

- 3. Route cable (1) and insert plugs.
- 4. Fasten cable to the transmission with cable ties.

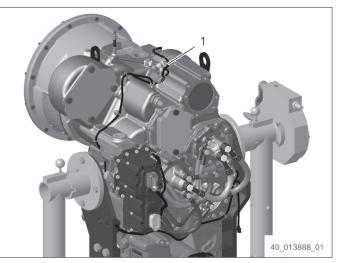


Fig. 435

### Installing cover sheets (filler neck)

- 1. Put on seal and cover sheet (1).
- 2. Turn in and tighten hexagon screws. Tightening torque: **23 Nm**

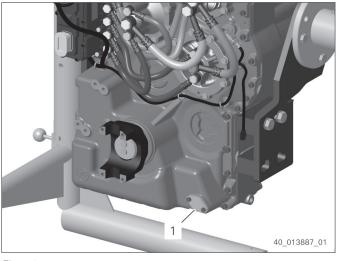


Fig. 436

- 3. Put on seal and cover sheet (1).
- 4. Turn in and tighten hexagon screws. Tightening torque: **23 Nm**

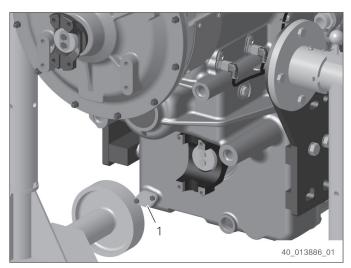


Fig. 437

### Installing pressure filters

- 1. Apply a thin film of oil to the seal of the pressure filters.
- 2. Bolt in the pressure filters (1) until contact between the sealing face to the filter head is obtained.
- 3. Tighten the pressure filters (1). Tightening torque: Contact sealing surface +90°to 180° As an alternative, use a tool with torque display to tighten the pressure filters. Tightening torque: 40 Nm
- Screw in the plunger switch including the O-ring (2) and tighten it. Tightening torque: 25 Nm (±5 Nm). The filter head is located near the transmission.

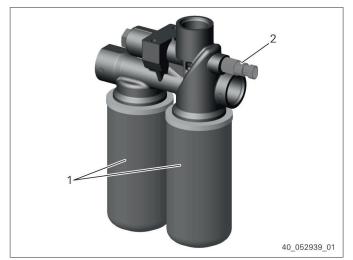


Fig. 438

### Adding oil

- Turn in screw plug with O-ring (2) and tighten.
   Tightening torque: 80 Nm
- 2. Before starting the transmission, fill up with oil according to the Operating Instructions *(refer to Section Document overview, page 6).*
- Screw in and tighten screw plug with O-ring (1).
   Tightening torque: 145 Nm

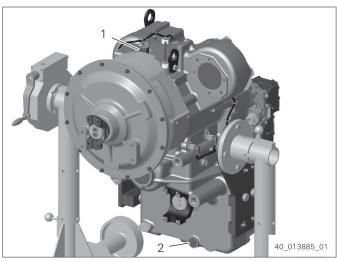


Fig. 439

### 2 AXLE

### 1) DISASSEMBLY

### (1) Disassembly output and brake

1 Fix axle to assembly truck.

Assembly truck	5870 350 000
Fixtures	5870 350 077
Clamping brackets	5870 350 075
Support	5870 350 125

% Before clamping the axle fully turn in the support.

Position axle first onto the two fixtures, secure with clamping brackets and then unbolt the support until contact with the axle is obtained.

② Loosen screw plugs (3EA, see figure AX02 and AX03) and drain oil from the axle.





7809AX02



7809AX03

- ③ Remove the breather valve (see arrow).
- \* To avoid any damage, the breather valve must be removed when separating the output.



7809AX04

④ Secure the output with the lifting device and loosen hexagon screws.

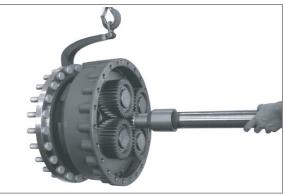
Then separate the output assy from the axle housing.

Load carrying device AA00 685 875

% Fix the load carrying device with wheel nuts.

7809AX05

- (5) Pull stub shaft and sun gear shaft.
- % Pay attention to potentially releasing shim(s).



7809AX06

6 Fix output to assembly truck.

Assembly truck	5870 350 000
Fixtures (2EA)	5870 350 113



⑦ Use a lever to remove the cover from the output shaft.



7809AX08

(8) Loosen locking screws and remove the releasing cover.



7809AX09

④ Lift the planetary carrier out of the brake housing by means of the lifting device.

•	Rear axle (planetary	carrier with 3
	planetary gears)	
	Internal extractor	5870 300 019
	Eye bolt	5870 204 073

- Front axle (planetary carrier with 4 planetary gears)
   Internal extractor
   Eye nut
   5870 300 008
   AA00 680 376
- Description Pull the tapered roller bearing from the planetary carrier.

Rapid grip	AA00 693 459
Basic tool	5873 004 001
Clamping cylinder	5873 003 016
Pump	5870 287 010





7809AX70

1) Disengage retaining ring.



7809AX71

12 Pull off planetary gear.

Extractor	AA00 696 012
Clamping cylinder	5873 003 016
Pump	5870 287 010



7809AX72

3 Lift the end plate out of the brake housing.



7809AX73

(14) Lift the disk package out of the brake housing.



15 Loosen hexagon screws, remove releasing disk and cup spring.

(6) Mount breather valve and press piston out of the brake housing by means of

compressed air.



7809AX13

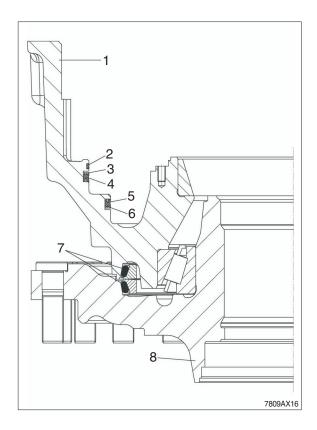
7809AX14

- 1 If necessary, remove guide ring, back-up rings and grooved rings out of the annular grooves of the brake housing (see arrows).
- \* For the installation position of the single parts please also refer to the following sketch.

7809AX15

#### Legend to sketch :

- 1 = Brake housing
- 2 = Guide ring
- 3 = Back-up ring
- 4 = Grooved ring
- 5 = Grooved ring
- 6 = Back-up ring
- 7 = Slide ring seal
- 8 = Output shaft



① Lift the brake housing from the output shaft by means of the lifting device.



7809AX17

① Use a lever to remove the slide ring seal from the brake housing.

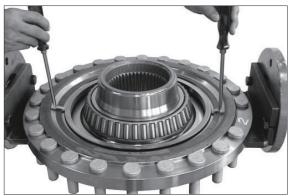
If necessary, force out both bearing outer rings.

Resetting device 5870 400 001



② Use a lever to remove the slide ring seal from the output shaft.

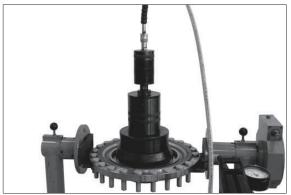
Resetting device 5870 400 001



7809AX74

② Pull the tapered roller bearing from the output shaft.

Gripping device	AA00 633 495
Adapter ring	AA00 633 500
Basic tool	5873 004 001
Pressure piece	AA00 696 181
Clamping cylinder	5873 003 016
Pump	5870 287 010



7809AX75

### (2) Disassembly axle housing

① Secure axle housing with the lifting device and loosen the hexagon screws. Then separate the axle housing from the axle drive housing.

2 Loosen the threaded connections and remove the releasing brake tube.



7809AX19



7809AX20



7809AX21

### (3) Disassembly axle drive housing

③ Loosen both screw necks.

① Secure axle drive housing with the lifting device and loosen the hexagon screws. Then separate the axle drive housing from the axle housing.

Eyebolt (M20)	5870 204 086
Thread insert	AA00 677 715



② Fix axle drive housing to the assembly truck.

Assembly truck	5870 350 000
Fixtures (2EA)	5870 350 113



7809AX76

③ Loosen cylindrical screws and lift the releasing bearing housing with the lifting device.

Inner extractor	
Eye bolt	

5870 300 008 AA00 680 376



7809AX77

④ Pull the bearing outer ring (see arrow) out of the bearing hole and remove the shim behind.



7809AX78

⑤ Press the piston out of the bearing housing by means of compressed air.



6 Lift differential out of the axle drive housing with the lifting device.

Inner extractor	5870 300 008
Eye nut	AA00 680 376

- Disassembly of the various differentials is described as of page 3-262.
- ⑦ Pull the bearing outer ring (see arrow) out of the bearing hole and remove the shim behind.







7809AX81

- ⑧ Heat slotted nut by means of hot-air blower.
- \* Slotted nut is secured with Loctite # 262.



7809AX82

(9) Loosen the slotted nut and remove the shim behind.

Wrench	5870 401 093
Fixing device	AA00 695 905
Clamping device	5870 240 002



① Pull input flange from the input pinion and use a lever to lift the shaft seal ring behind out of the axle drive housing.



7809AX84

 Use a two-armed puller to press the input pinion out of the axle drive housing and remove the releasing tapered roller bearing.



7809AX85

2 Remove the spacer and pull the tapered roller bearing from the input pinion.

Gripping device	AA00 253 881
Basic tool	5873 003 000
Clamping cylinder	5873 003 016
Pump	5870 287 010



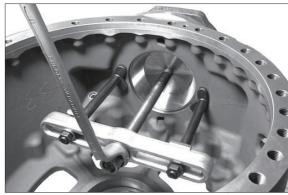
Is Loosen the threaded connection and remove the releasing oil tube.



If necessary pull the internal bearing outer ring out of the axle drive housing and remove the shim behind.

Assembly device	
Counter support	

AA00 696 770 5870 300 020



7809AX88

(5) If necessary pull the external bearing ring out of the axle drive housing.

Assembly device	AA00 696 770
Counter support	5870 300 020



7809AX89

# (4) Disassembly differentials

Disassembly multi-disk differential lock

1 Remove axial roller cage (arrow).



7809AX90

② Pull both tapered roller bearings from the differential.

Crown wheel side	
Rapid grip	AA00 303 274
Basic tool	5873 004 001
Pressure piece	AA00 694 360
Opposite side	
Grab sleeve	5873 004 026
Basic tool	5873 004 001
Clamping cylinder	5873 003 016
Pump	5870 287 010

③ Preload the differential by means of the press and loosen the locking screws.

Pressure piece

AA00 694 360



7809AX91



7809AX92

④ Lift the differential cover from the differential housing by means of the lifting device.

Inner extractor
Eye nut

5870 300 008 AA00 680 376



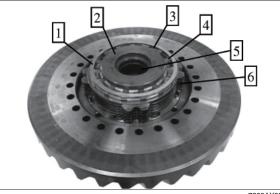
⑤ Preload the compression spring by means of the press and disengage the retaining ring.

Then pull the sliding sleeve out of the differential cover and remove the releasing compression springs.



7809AX94

- 6 Remove single parts.
  - 1 = Disk
  - 2 = Pressure piece
  - 3 = Cage
  - 4 = Lever(15EA)
  - 5 = Disk carrier
  - 6 = Disk package



7809AX95

⑦ Loosen hexagon screws and remove the releasing disk.



7809AX96

⑧ Remove thrust washer and axle bevel gear from the differential housing.



9 Force out slotted pins (4EA).



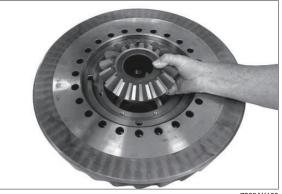
10 Pull spider shafts (4EA) and remove the releasing spider gears with the thrust washers from the differential housing.





7809AX99

1 Remove the axle bevel gears and the shims behind.



7809AX100

12 Support the crown wheel and force out the differential housing.



# 2) ASSEHBY

## (1) Assembly differentials

### Assembly multi-disk differential lock

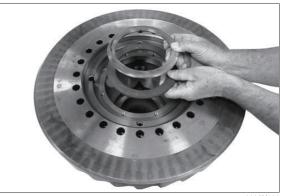
① Mount two adjusting screws and press the heated crown wheel onto the differential housing until contact is obtained.

5871 204 040 Adjusting screws

2 Insert disk and thrust washer into the differential housing

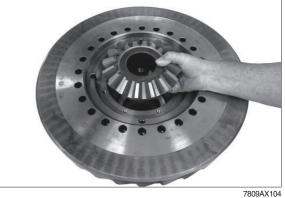


7809AX102



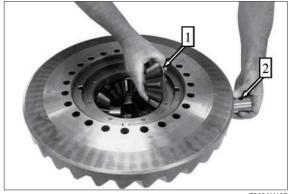
7809AX103

③ Insert axle bevel gear.



- ④ Insert spider gears with thrust washers into the differential housing and fix them with the spider shaft.
- \* Thrust washers must be positioned with the tabs (see arrow 1) in the recesses of the differential housing.

Pay attention to radial installation position of the spider shafts (fixing holes, arrow 2).



- (5) Fix spider shafts with slotted pins (2 pieces / hole).
- \* Press the slotted pins with 180° offset openings into flush position.



7809AX106

6 Mount second axle bevel gear and thrust washer.



7809AX107

- ⑦ Mount disk and fix it with hexagon screws.
  - Tightening torque (M10/10.9) : 5.1 kgf • m (36.9 lbf • ft)



## Setting of disk package

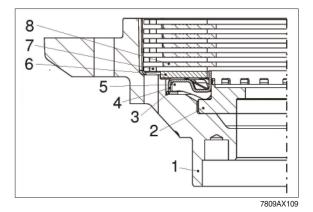
- 8 Premount single parts according to the adjacent sketch.
  - 1 = Differential cover
  - 2 = Pressure piece
  - 3 = Disk
  - 4 = Cage
  - 5 = Lever(15EA)
  - 6 = End plate
  - 7 = Outer disks (optional)
  - 8 = Inner disks
- (9) Preload disk package with an axial force of F = 7 ton.

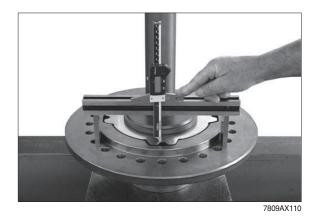
Then check the setting dimension A = 15.5 \_ 0.2 mm from the mounting face of the differential cover to the plane face of the outer disk (see also below sketch).

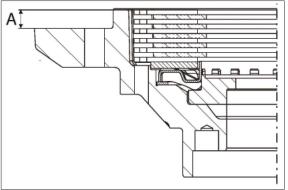
\* Any deviation from the specified setting dimension must be corrected with a corresponding outer disk.

### Legend to sketch:

A = Setting dimension = 15.5 <sub>-0.2</sub> mm







7809AX111

10 Engage the snap ring (see arrow) into

7809AX112

the annular groove of the disk carrier.

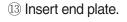
 Insert the premounted disk carrier onto the axle bevel gear.



7809AX113

- 12 Mount outer and inner disks.
- \* For the number of disks and disk arrangement please refer to the parts manual.
- \* Pay attention to the radial installation position of the disk package, as shown on the adjacent figure.

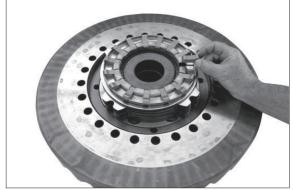
7809AX114



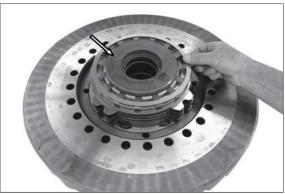


7809AX115

14 Mount cage and lever (15EA).



(5) Insert pressure piece (see arrow) and install disk.



7809AX117

(6) Insert compression springs (6EA) into the differential cover.



7809AX118

Insert sliding sleeve.



7809AX119

(B) Preload the compression springs by means of the press and engage the retaining ring into the annular groove of the sliding sleeve.



(9) Mount two adjusting screws and insert the differential cover by means of the lifting device.

Adjusting screws	5870 204 040
Inner extractor	5870 300 008
Eye nut	AA00 680 376



7809AX121

- ② Preload the differential by means of the press and bolt with **new** locking screws.
  - · Tightening torque (M16/12.9) : 40.7 kgf · m (295 lbf · ft)

Pressure piece AA00 694 360



7809AX122

- ② Heat both tapered roller bearings and insert until contact is obtained.
- \* Adjust tapered roller bearing after cooling down.



7809AX123

② Insert axial roller cage (see arrow).



### (2) Assembly axle drive housing

% If crown wheel or input pinion are damaged, both parts must be jointly replaced.

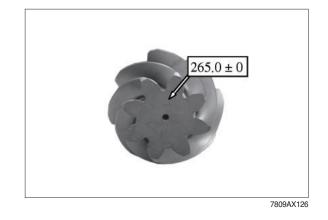
In case of a new installation of a complete bevel gear set pay attention to an identical mating number of input pinion and crown wheel.

# Determination of shim thickness to obtain a correct contact pattern

\* The following measuring procedures must be carried out with utmost accuracy.

Inaccurate measurements lead to an incorrect contact pattern requiring an additional disassembly and reassembly of input pinion and differential.





③ Determine dimension III (bearing width).

Dimension III e.g. ..... 63.60 mm

Calculation example A :

Dimension I	. 331.25 mm
Dimension II	- 265.00 mm
Dimension III	- 63.60 mm
Difference = shim	s = 2.60 mm



7809AX127

## Reassembly of input pinion

 Undercool the external bearing outer ring and insert it into the axle drive housing until contact is obtained.

Driver tool	5870 050 007
Handle	5870 260 004



7809AX128

 $\bigcirc$  Insert the determined shim e.g. s = 2.60 mm into the housing hole.



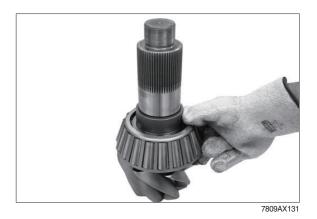
③ Undercool the internal bearing outer ring and bring it into contact position in the housing hole by using the assembly fixture.

Assembly fixture

AA00 623 955



④ Heat the tapered roller bearing and insert it into the input pinion until contact is obtained.



Setting of rolling torque of input pinion bearing 0.1~0.5 kgf·m (without shaft seal ring)

- (5) Insert spacer (e.g. s = 7.13 mm).
- \* According to our experience the necessary rolling torque is obtained when reusing the spacer which has been removed during disassembly (e.g. s = 7.13 mm).

A later check of the rolling torque, however, is absolutely necessary.

⑥ Insert the preassembled input pinion into the axle drive housing and insert the heated tapered roller bearing until contact is obtained.

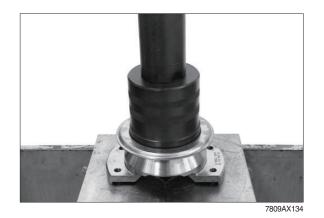


7809AX132



7809AX133

- ⑦ Press the protection plate onto the input flange (see arrow) until contact is obtained.
- \* Do not fit the shaft seal ring until the contact pattern has been checked.



- (8) Insert input flange and fix it by means of disk and slotted nut.
  - Tightening torque :

122 kgf · m (885 lbf · ft)

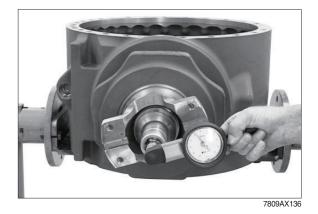
Wrench	5870 401 093
Fixing device	AA00 695 905
Clamping device	870 240 002

- % Preliminarily mount slotted nut without Loctite.
- While tightening rotate the input pinion several times in both directions.
- ④ Check rolling torque (0.15~0.51 kgf·m without shaft seal ring).
- When installing new bearings try to achieve the upper value of the rolling torque.
- In case of deviations from the necessary rolling torque correct with a corresponding spacer (figure AX132) as specified below. Insufficient rolling torque - install thinner spacer ring.

Excessive rolling torque - install thicker spacer ring.

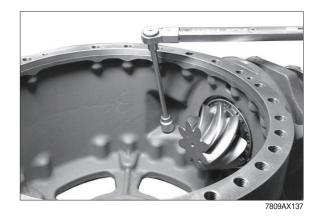


7809AX135



10 Mount threaded connection.

 Tightening torque : 10.2 kgf · m (73.8 lbf · ft)



(1) Mount oil tube.

Tightening torque :

10.2 kgf · m (73.8 lbf · ft)



7809AX138

12 Grease O-rings (see arrows) and insert them into the annular grooves of the piston.



7809AX139

(13) Insert piston (see arrow) into the bearing housing until contact is obtained.



Determination of shims for setting of bearing rolling torque (differential housing) and backlash (bevel gear set)

- Determine the required shims on the basis of the read value (deviation/test dimension) and the corresponding specifications of the table below: (KRS – SET – RIGHT) (KRS = bevel gear set):
  - 1 Deviation see crown wheel rear side.

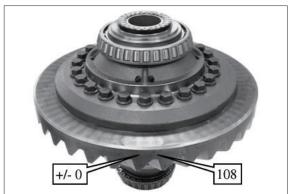
The test dimension 108 is stamped into the crown wheel rear side. If no + or deviation is indicated, this value corresponds to the actual value 0 in the table below. According to this value, the required shims are allocated in the table below.

\* Any + or - deviation of the test dimension caused by production is also marked on the crown wheel rear side (e.g.- 20 or - 10 or 10 or 20).

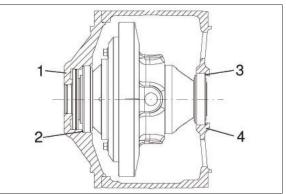
In accordance with this deviation, the required shims are allocated in the table below.

Legend to sketch:

- 1 = Bearing housing
- 2 = Shim (crown wheel side)
- 3 = Shim (differential carrier side)
- 4 = Axle drive housing



7809AX141



	Shims for differential					
Crow wheel marking	- 30	- 20	- 10	0	10	20
Deviation	- 0.3	- 0.2	- 0.1	0	0.1	0.2
Shim diff cage side shim thickness	1.1	1.2	1.3	1.4	1.5	1.6
Shim P/No.	ZGAQ-03681	ZGAQ-03676	ZGAQ-03677	ZGAQ-03678	ZGAQ-03679	ZGAQ-03680
Shim crown wheel side shim thickness	1.7	1.6	1.5	1.4	1.3	1.2
Shim P/No.	ZGAQ-03687	ZGAQ-03686	ZGAQ-03685	ZGAQ-03684	ZGAQ-03683	ZGAQ-03682

(2) Insert the determined shim (e.g. s = 1.4) mm) into the hole of the axle drive housing and reset until contact with the bearing outer ring is obtained.



7809AX143

3 Cover some drive and coast flanks of the crown wheel with marking ink. Then insert the premounted differential into the axle drive housing.

Inner extractor	5870 300 008
Eye nut	AA00 680 376



7809AX144

(4) Insert the determined shim (e.g. s = 1.4 mm) into the bearing housing and reset the bearing outer ring until contact is obtained.



7809AX145

(5) Place the premounted bearing housing onto the axle drive housing by means of the lifting device.

Inner extractor	5870 300 008
Eye nut	AA00 680 376

\* Preliminarily mount the bearing housing without O-ring.



- <sup>(6)</sup> Fix the bearing housing by means of cylindrical screws (3EA).
  - Tightening torque (M12/10.9) :

5.1 kgf  $\cdot$  m (36.9 lbf  $\cdot$  ft)



7809AX147

### Leakage test of lock

- ⑦ Pressurize the lock (p = 1 bar), close shut-off valve and remove air line.
- % No noticeable pressure loss is allowed to occur within 10 sec.



7809AX148

(8) By rotating the input flange, roll crown wheel over the input pinion in both directions several times.

Then remove the bearing housing again and lift the differential out of the axle drive housing.

Compare the obtained contact pattern with contact pattern.

- In case of any contact pattern deviation, a measuring error was made when determining the shim (Figure AX129), which must be corrected by all means.
- ④ After the contact pattern check insert the differential again into the axle drive housing.





# Reassembly of shaft seal ring (figure AX151~153)

Dosen slotted nut and pull the input flange from the input pinion.

Wrench	5870 401 093
Fixing device	AA00 695 905
Clamping device	5870 240 002



7809AX151

(1) Mount the shaft seal ring with the seal lip showing to the oil chamber.

Driver tool AA00 623 986

- \* The exact installation position of the shaft seal ring is obtained when using the specified driver tool.
- Wet the outer diameter of the shaft seal ring with spirit directly before installation and fill the space between seal and dust lip with grease.



7809AX152

Insert input flange and finally tighten by means of disk and slotted nut.

· Tightening torque :

122 kgf · m (12.5 lbf · ft)

Wrench	5870 401 093
Fixing device	AA00 695 905
Clamping device	5870 240 002

- % Cover the thread of the slotted nut with loctite #262.
- I Grease O-ring (see arrow) and insert it into the annular groove of the bearing housing.







- Insert the bearing housing by means of the lifting device and finally tighten it with cylindrical screws.
  - · Tightening torque (M12/10.9) :
    - 5.1 kgf · m (36.9 lbf · ft)



7809AX155

Is Grease O-rings (see arrows) and insert them on both sides of the axle drive housing.



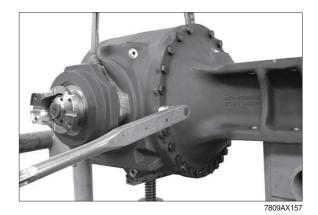
7809AX156

(6) Mount two adjusting screws and bring axle drive housing in contact position with the axle housing by using the lifting device.

Then fix the axle drive housing with hexagon screws.

· Tightening torque (M20/10.9) :

\* After mounting the axle drive housing unbolt the support until contact is obtained.



### (3) Assembly axle housing

① Mount both fittings.  $\cdot$  Tightening torque : 3.67 kgf  $\cdot$  m (26.6 lbf  $\cdot$  ft)



7809AX158

2 Mount brake tube.

 $\cdot$  Tightening torque : 10.2 kgf  $\cdot$  m (73.8 lbf  $\cdot$  ft)



7809AX159

③ Mount two adjusting screws and bring the axle housing into contact position with the axle drive housing by using the lifting device.

Then fix the axle housing by means of hexagon screws.

 $\cdot$  Tightening torque (M20/10.9) :

57.1 kgf  $\cdot$  m (413 lbf  $\cdot$  ft)

Adjusting screws (M20) 5870 204 024

\* After assembling the axle housing secure the axle with clamping brackets.



### (4) Aeassembly output and brake

① Pull in wheel stud into the output shaft until contact is obtained.

Wheel stud puller - basic tool

Insert (M22x1.5)

obtained.

5870 610 001 5870 610 002

Special tool may only be used for repair solution when exchanging individual wheel studs with mounted output shaft. When using a new output shaft, mount the wheel studs with the press.

② Heat tapered roller bearing and insert it into the output shaft until contact is



7809AX28

7809AX29

② Wet O-ring of the slide ring seal and locating hole with spirit.

Snap **new** slide ring seal (1) into the output shaft.

Then mount **new** slide ring seal (part 2) accordingly into the brake housing.

- For the installation position of the seal please also refer to sketch AX34.
- The surface of the slide ring seal may not have any grooves, scratches or other types of damage. Take care that the sealing surface is parallel to the housing face.

The O-rings must be mounted evenly into the locating hole and must not bulge out of the hole. Risk of injury - Metal rings have extremely sharp edges. Wear protective gloves.



7809AX30



- ③ Insert the premounted brake housing by means of the lifting device over the output shaft until contact is obtained.
- Before clamping the seal rings to installation dimension, clean the sliding surfaces and apply an oil film. We recommend to use a leather cloth soaked with oil.
- ④ Insert back-up rings and grooved rings into the annular grooves of the brake housing (see arrows).
- % Pay attention to the installation position; please also refer to sketch AX34.



7809AX31



7809AX32

 ⑤ Clean the annular groove of the brake housing with spirit.
 Then insert the guide ring into the annular groove (see also the following

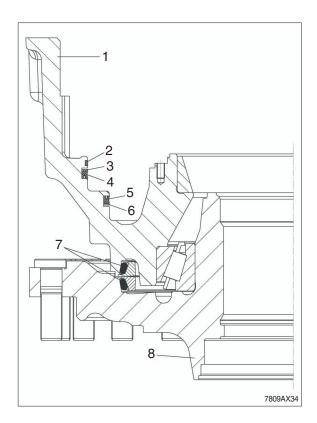
sketch) and fix it with loctite #415 at its extremities (see arrows).

- \* The full circumference of the guide ring must be in an exact contact position.
- We upon installation the orifice of the guide ring must show upwards (12 o'clock).



### Legend to sketch:

- 1 = Brake housing
- 2 = Guide ring
- 3 = Back-up ring
- 4 = Grooved ring
- 5 = Grooved ring
- 6 = Back-up ring
- 7 = Slide ring seal
- 8 = Output shaft



⑥ Insert the piston into the brake housing and carefully install with the fixing device until contact is obtained.

Fixing device

AA00 680 530

- Sufficiently oil seal surface of piston/ back-up rings, grooved rings and guide ring (W-10 oils to be used).
- ⑦ Insert cup spring into the piston with the convex side showing upwards.





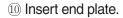
7809AX36

- 8 Insert disk and fix it by means of hexagon screws.
  - · Tightening torque (M8/10.9) :
    - 3.47 kgf · m (25.1 lbf · ft)



7809AX3

- (9) Mount outer and inner disks.
- \* For the number of disks and the disk arrangement please refer to the relating spare parts list.





7809AX38



7809AX39

## Setting of installation dimension 57.25~ 57.79 mm

(1) Measure installation dimension from the mounting face of the brake housing to the front face of the end plate.

Installation dimension e.g . . . . 57.50 mm

\* Any deviation from the necessary installation dimension must be corrected with an appropriate outer disk (see spare parts manual).



Press stop bolt into the cover until contact is obtained.

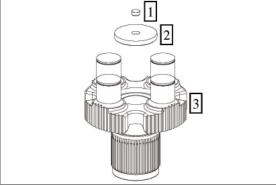
Then insert the premounted cover into the planetary carrier until contact is obtained.

## Legend to sketch:

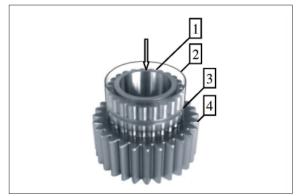
- 1 = Stop bolt
- 2 = Cover
- 3 = Planetary carrier
- Insert the cylindrical roller bearing into the planetary gear – for this purpose press the cylindrical roller bearing through the packaging sleeve until the snap ring engages into the annular groove of the planetary gear.
- \* Use packaging sleeve to facilitate assembly.
  - 1 = Cylindrical roller bearing
  - 2 = Packaging sleeve
  - 3 =Snap ring
  - 4 = Planetary gear
- Heat bearing inner rings and insert the premounted planetary gears with large radius facing the planetary carrier (downwards) until contact is obtained.
- \* Adjust bearing inner rings after cooling down.

Then fix planetary gears by means of retaining rings.

15 Heat tapered roller bearing and install it to the planetary carrier until contact is obtained.







7809AX162



7809AX163



(6) Wet front face (contact face bearing inner ring, arrow 1) and profile (teeth, arrow 1) in the output shaft with anticorrosive agent.



7809AX41

- Align disk package centrally and radially. Then insert the planetary carrier by means of the lifting device into the teeth of the output shaft until contact is obtained.
  - · Rear axle (planetary carrier with 3 planetary gears) Inner extractor 5870 300 019 5870 204 073 Eve bolt

	Lyc bolt	50/0 204 0/0
•	Front axle (planetary	carrier with 4
	planetary gears)	
	Inner extreptor	5070 000 000

Inner extractor	5870 300 008
Eye nut	AA00 680 376



(1) Pivot output 90°.

Insert disk and fix planetary carrier with new locking screws.

% Tighten locking screws successively with a tightening torque of 20.4 kgf · m (147.5 lbf · ft).

Then retighten the locking screws successively with a tightening torque of 51 kgf  $\cdot$  m (369 lbf  $\cdot$  ft).



(19 Install O-ring (see arrow) to the cover.



7809AX44

② Insert the cover into the output shaft until contact is obtained.



7809AX45

Set the axial play of the sun gear shaft  $0.5 \sim 2.0 \text{ mm}$ 

② Determine dimension I, from the mounting face of the brake housing to the front face of the stop bolt.

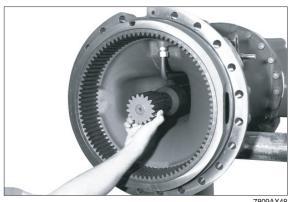
Dimension I e.g	58.60 mm
Gauge blocks	5870 200 066
Straightedge	5870 200 022

- ② Insert stub shaft into the teeth of the axle bevel gear until contact is obtained.
- ※ Pay attention to the installation position; mount the stub shaft with the long teeth showing to the differential.





2 Insert the sun gear shaft until contact is obtained.

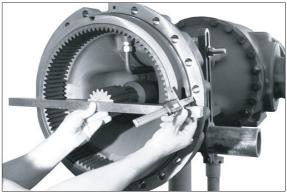


7809AX48

23 Measure dimension II, from the front face of the sun gear shaft to the mounting surface of the axle housing.

Difference = shim e.g.	s = 1.00 mm
Required axial play e.g	1.00 mm
Difference	2.00 mm
Dimension II	<u>- 56.60 mm</u>
Dimension I	58.60 mm
Calculation example :	
Straightedge	5870 200 022
Dimension II e.g.	56.60 mm

24 Insert sun gear shaft into the planetary carrier.



7809AX49



25 Fix determined shim e.g. s = 1.00 mm with grease into the sun gear shaft.



② Fix O-ring (see arrow) with grease into the countersink of the brake housing.



⑦ Grease O-ring (see arrow) and install it to the axle housing.

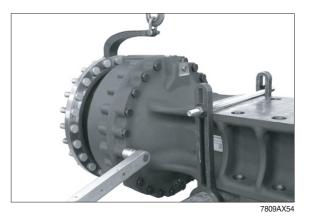


7809AX53

- Mount two adjusting screws and use the lifting device to bring the output into contact position with the axle housing. Then fix the output by means of hexagon screws.
  - $\cdot$  Tightening torque (M20/10.9) ; 57.1 kgf  $\cdot$  m (413 lbf  $\cdot$  ft)

Adjusting screws (M20)	5870 204 024
Load-carrying device	AA00 685 875

- \* Fix load carrying device with wheel stud.
- 29 Mount breather (see arrow).





- ③ Check brake hydraulics for leakages.
- Before starting the test, completely breathe the brake hydraulics. Then pressurize the brake temporarily

(5EA) with p = 100 bar max.

### High-pressure test :

Build up test pressure  $p = 100_{-10}$  bar max. and close connection to HP pump via shut-off valve.

A pressure drop of max. 2 % (2 bar) is permissible during a 5 minute testing time.

#### Low-pressure test :

Reduce test pressure p = 5 bar and close shut-off valve.

No pressure drop is allowed during a 5 minute testing time.

### Test media :

Engine oils SAE 10-W

HP pump	5870 287 007
Clutch	0501 207 939
Reduction (M18x1.5)	5870 950 161
Oil collector bottle	5870 286 072

③ Check operability of differential hydraulic lock

Build up pressure p = 20 bar max. and close connection to HP pump via shut-off valve.

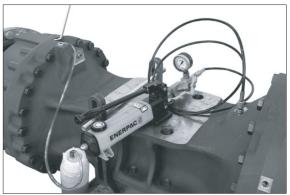
#### Lock on:

When rotating the input flange, both outputs must have the same direction of rotation.

### Lock off:

When rotating the input flange one side holds or has the opposite direction of rotation.

Prior to putting the axle into operation, fill it with oil according to the related lubrication and maintenance instructions.





7809AX165